

Genealogical Research Essentials



Norman E. Wright
David H. Pratt

Genealogical Research Essentials

NORMAN E. WRIGHT AND
DAVID H. PRATT

Renewed and enthusiastic interest in genealogical research has created a need for up-to-date and more informative instructional materials; especially for those who desire to complete competent and successful research. There is a very real need for one text which will give the essentials in genealogical research, for many persons are becoming involved in genealogy and want to know what to do in the least amount of time to properly solve their genealogical problems. Others are taking part in training sessions and are applying themselves in the work which has resulted in a very real need for more detail on specific records and sources.

Not everyone involved desires to become a professional but he usually wants to obtain informative instructional materials to accomplish his goals. This work is an attempt to help the person who is interested in doing his own research. It is also a valuable guide for the professional who desires to utilize proper research methods and procedures in solving the problems of others. The professional genealogist must strengthen his understanding of genealogical records and sources and keep abreast of evaluation and analysis techniques. Other persons who become interested in genealogy, whether for religious, social, or commercial reasons will also find the book useful.

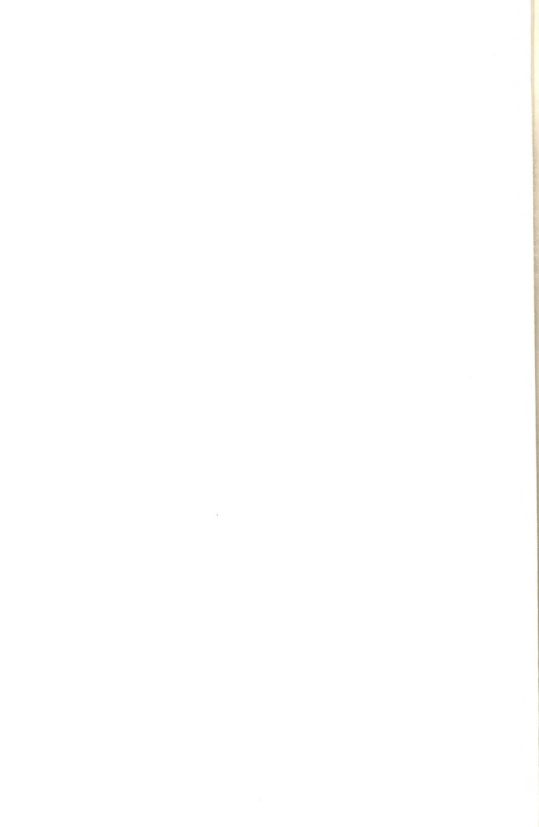
The work devotes one chapter to the LDS doctrinal aspects of genealogy and emphasizes research methods and procedures which have been proven successful in actual research. It also outlines procedures and techniques to be used for successful research in North American and in British genealogical research.

BOOKCRAFT, INC.
Salt Lake City, Utah

Book Index
Angelus - Brando
A LAST-KLEER
VINYL BOOK COVER
Cat. No. 101
9 3/4"

Valyn K. Dacworth
1215 Royal Ave.
Idaho Falls, Ida
83401
1969

GENEALOGICAL RESEARCH ESSENTIALS



GENEALOGICAL RESEARCH ESSENTIALS

by

Norman E. Wright

David H. Pratt



BOOKCRAFT
Salt Lake City, Utah

COPYRIGHT © 1967 BY
BOOKCRAFT, INC.

All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or any
parts thereof in any form or by any media without
written permission is prohibited.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CATALOG CARD NUMBER 67-17926

FIRST PRINTING, 1967

LITHOGRAPHED BY
PUBLISHERS PRESS



SALT LAKE CITY, UTAH
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Preface and Acknowledgments

Many persons are presently taking up their pedigree charts and ploughing into this fascinating and challenging field of genealogical research. Never before has there been so much interest shown in the work and never before has there been such a real need for good informative text and reference material. Most of the persons who are becoming active in the work have had no previous experience and yet they desire to accomplish and complete high quality research. Others are entering the field with an idea of becoming professionals in genealogical research and they must complete quality research in order to maintain their positions. Both of these groups should have the best text materials possible in order to perform competent genealogical research.

It has long been felt that a single volume is needed to give the research essentials relating to genealogy. It is true that much has already been written about the subject and many of the titles of such works imply that they give the reader just what is needed. However, one or more points essential to genealogical research are missing from each of these published works and one needs access to several such volumes to gain the information required. What is needed is a text which adequately covers the fundamentals of genealogical research and which explains just how a person should go about searching the various records and sources. Genealogy is not as difficult as many might think, but it is true that many have shied away from it because it appears to be so awesome. As the unusual title for chapter 1 indicates, genealogy is like Africa in the 19th century—many know the outline and shape of the shore, but few have explored the interior. It is felt that a mastery of the essential material outlined in this book will greatly assist the beginner in overcoming his fear of research (the Dark Continent) and will put him well on the road to genealogical success.

The many geographical genealogical differences and peculiarities can not all be covered in this text, but a knowledge of the fundamentals will better help potential genealogists to understand the differences.

This book came about as a result of the First Annual Priesthood Genealogical Research Seminar which was held at Brigham Young University in August of 1966. The authors prepared a special manual for that seminar which included much of their genealogical experience and thinking along the research essentials line. The manual was used as the basic text for students in several introductory genealogical courses taught at Brigham Young University during the fall semester, 1966, and after it had been in use for a time, several errors of commission and omission became evident. It became clear also that a better arrangement of the material and the inclusion of certain additional information was desirable. This book is the result.

It is realized that there may still be errors in the work and that further revision may be necessary as the text is used in classes and in applied research. However, it is hoped that it will fill the real need—telling people just how to go about genealogical research.

Special appreciation and acknowledgment is given to Elder Theodore M. Burton, Vice-President and Managing Director of the Genealogical Society of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, and to Professor Ernest C. Jeppsen, Dean of the College of Industrial and Technical Education at Brigham Young University. It was only through their cooperation that the original work was first made possible as the manual for the 1966 Seminar.

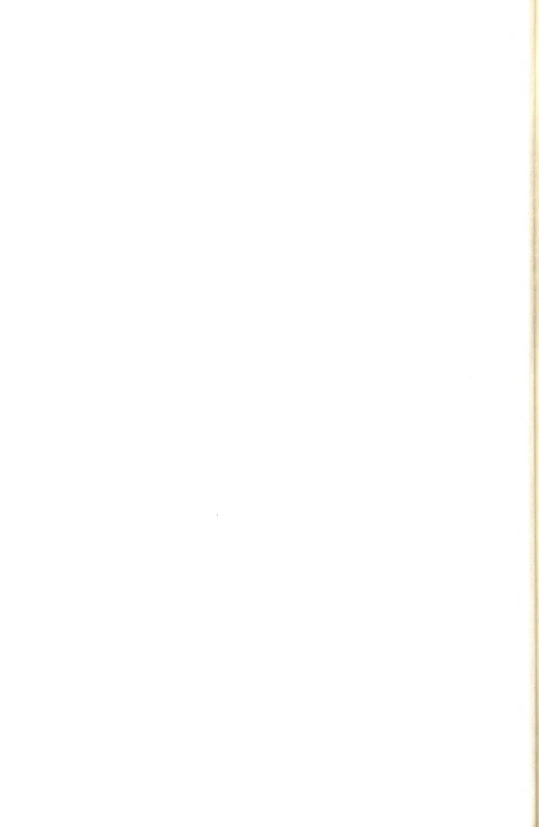
Staff members David E. Gardner, Frank Smith and Derek Harland of the LDS Genealogical Society were kind enough to allow us access to their materials, and Elder Paul F. Royall, Executive Secretary of the Society, granted permission to reproduce certain items from the Genealogical Instruction Manual. Special thanks are extended to Donald Lines Jacobus who graciously allowed us to use his material, and appreciation is extended to other authors whose materials have provided motivation to us.

Special credit is given to members of the Research Department and Information Services of the LDS Genealogical Society with whom the authors worked for several years. The knowledge and understanding which they have shared with us and their emphasis that better research is needed have been appreciated. Students in Genealogical Research Technology classes at Brigham Young University have also encouraged us in this work. Noel R. Barton and Dennis R. Jenkins assisted in arranging materials and our warmest personal regards are extended to them and to Helen Stillman.

Extention Publications of the Division of Continuing Education at Brigham Young University were responsible for the first edition of this work and their staff is given special credit. Their gracious assistance has helped the material to grow from a seminar manual to a textbook.

Pleasant Grove, Utah
January 1, 1967

Norman Edgar Wright
David H. Pratt



CONTENTS

PREFACE AND ACKNOWLEDGMENTS	5
CONTENTS	9
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS	12
INTRODUCTION	13

PART I

FUNDAMENTALS OF GENEALOGY

Chapter	Page
1 GENEALOGY, THE DARK CONTINENT	21
Salvation for the Living and the Dead	
Powers of the Priesthood	
Church and Individual Responsibility	
The Role of Genealogy	
2 SCIENTIFIC GENEALOGY	37
The Scientific Method	
Is Genealogy an Exact Science?	
Barriers to Scientific Research	
Terminology	
Research Methods and Procedures	
3 GENEALOGICAL IDENTIFICATION	57
The Name	
The Period of Time	
The Locality	
Kinship	
4 GENEALOGICAL EVIDENCE	81
The Origin of Evidence	
Genealogical Proof	
The Classification of Evidence	
The Evaluation of Evidence	
Jurisdictions and Sources	

PART II

RESEARCH TOOLS AND LIBRARY USE

- 5 CLASSIFICATION AND CATALOGING SYSTEMS 97
- Library of Congress Classification
 - Dewey Decimal Classification
 - The J. Reuben Clark, Jr., Library
 - The LDS Genealogical Society Library
- 6 REFERENCE MATERIALS 111
- Reference Works on Methodology
 - Reference Works on Related Sciences
 - Reference Works on Secondary Genealogical Sources
 - Reference Works on Primary Genealogical Sources
- 7 CHARTS, FORMS, AND NOTEKEEPING 125
- The Pedigree Chart
 - Numbering and Lettering Systems
 - The Family Group Record
 - Notekeeping in Genealogical Research

PART III

THE SURVEY PHASE

- 8 THE GENERAL SURVEY 147
- Family and Home Sources
 - Special LDS Sources
 - Printed Secondary Sources
- 9 THE SPECIAL LDS SURVEY 183
- Membership Collections
 - Church Emigration Records
 - Ordinance Collections

Collections of the Church Historian
Early Church and Utah Collections
Miscellaneous Collections

PART IV

THE RESEARCH PHASE

10	ORIGINAL RECORDS AND SOURCES	225
	Beginning U.S. Research	
	Beginning English Research	

APPENDIX	307
BIBLIOGRAPHY	311
INDEX	313

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Salvation-Exaltation Chart	32
English Birth Certificate	60
Outline Pedigree Chart	77
Relationship Chart Showing Common Ancestor	78
Relationship Chart Showing Degree of Removal	78
Relationship Chart Showing Various Degrees of Kinship	80
Examples from Card Catalog-BYU	104
Example of Ascent Pedigree Chart	125
Example of Descent Pedigree Chart	126
Example of Wheel Pedigree Chart	126
Example of Five Generation Outline Pedigree Chart	127
Pedigree Charts showing Predetermined Number System	130
Pedigree Charts showing Predetermined Letter System	131
Pedigree Charts showing Random Number System	132
Pedigree Charts showing Random Letter System	133
1965 LDS Ordinance Style Family Group Record	136
Family Group Record—Non-LDS Work Style	137
Endowment Card of Joseph Wright	161
Temple Ordinance Chronology List	204
PEDIGREE Example—Haines Family	230
Examples of TIB Cards—Various Persons	231
Pedigree Example—Haines Family	232
Family History Example—Doty Family	233
Death Certificate of Kindness Ann Haines	235
Tombstone Inscriptions—Haines and Doty Family	236
Military—Letter	237
Military—Pension Roll Document	237
Military—Pension Deposition	238
Certified Copy of an Entry of Birth	296
Certified Copy of an Entry of Marriage	297
Certified Copy of an Entry of Death	298
Copy of Banns of Marriage	300
Copy of Marriage License Bond	301
An Example of Marriage Entries in a Parish Register	302
An Example of Nonconformist Records	303

Introduction

Competent genealogical research demands a great deal of study, ability and hard work. It can be accomplished by the ordinary person who has the incentive to try, but he must put forward special effort to become a successful genealogist. Anyone can achieve to some degree in genealogy, but not everyone engaged in the work is competent. In fact, this field is probably plagued with more incompetency than any other. Speaking in this vein, Donald Lines Jacobus, in *Genealogy as Pastime and Profession*, said:

Any person, regardless of education, experience or natural ability, can set up to be a professional genealogist. No course of training is required, no examinations as to fitness have to be passed. For this very reason, the profession appeals to many who lack the mentality for this kind of work, and who would be unsuccessful in other professions. Those who employ a lawyer know whether or not he wins their case; those who employ a physician can judge whether or not he improves their health. But unless those who employ a genealogist themselves have considerable knowledge of genealogical research, they have absolutely no criterion by which to measure the capacity of the genealogist they employ. If the latter reports success and sends them an ancestral line, they are easily duped and do not readily discover that the line is inaccurate or is based on unreliable printed sources. Because of this, incompetents can survive longer in the genealogical profession than they could in most. Retired clergymen, school teachers who desire less nerve-wracking work, and elderly people who wish to add something to their incomes or pensions, often view genealogy as a genteel profession which fulfills their requirements. Some of these people possess the natural mental qualifications for the work, and after they have gained experience, become capable genealogists. Others lack the type of mentality which research requires and never suspect their own unfitness for the work they are doing. Very few professional genealogists are deliberately fraudulent, but many are so naive or careless or haphazard in their work that the results are fully as bad.¹

This article was written in the early 1930's and unfortunately its conclusions are still partially true. Many purport to be competent professional genealogists, but often they are not only guilty of being naive, careless and haphazard in

their work; but some are even deceptive in their actions. It is good to report, however, that examinations of fitness and courses of training are now being offered in the field of scientific genealogy. The Genealogical Society of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints now administers an "Accreditation Examination" to determine the qualifications of would-be genealogists. This does not guarantee that an individual will perform competent research, but it does indicate that the person meets certain standards and has the ability to perform satisfactorily. The examination is administered by persons who have proven themselves competent through production and long experience. The LDS Genealogical Society at Salt Lake City, Utah, will provide an interested person with the names and addresses of those so qualified.

In a similar manner Brigham Young University is responsible for a series of genealogical courses to better qualify genealogists for this most important and interesting work. For many years the University has offered courses in genealogy, but until 1961 these courses were oriented primarily to the role of genealogy in the LDS Church. Emphasis was on the doctrinal aspects of genealogy, motivational devices for interesting people in genealogy, practical instruction in the completion of charts and forms, and the arrangement of book of remembrance materials. It was not oriented to instruction in scientific genealogical research to any large degree.

In 1961, the General College of Brigham Young University established a program to offer a two-year certificate in genealogical research technology and that program has grown to an associate degree program in the College of Industrial and Technical Education. The upgrading of curriculum and instruction has consistently been in force and courses are presently being offered in North American, British, and Scandinavian research. Courses in other European areas as well as Asian and Polynesian research are planned when the demand requires and competent instructors are available. The college is establishing a genealogical research laboratory and is making good strides in obtaining

the instructional materials to better accomplish their objectives.

The associate degree program presently requires successful completion of 64 semester credit hours of classwork, with 32 hours in general educational work and 32 hours in specialized genealogical work. An applied research seminar represents one of the final courses and consists of applied research on actual genealogical problems. This seminar has been most useful in testing and examining individual qualifications and is contributing to the development of better genealogical instructional materials.

Competent genealogical research demands several things of the researcher. There must first be a genuine interest in the subject, followed by certain natural ability with some know-how and practical skill. It requires a knowledge of scientific method and the ability to apply that knowledge to certain problems. It also requires a working knowledge of genealogical records and sources and the ability to utilize them to their fullest extent in solving genealogical problems. Last, but not least, it requires a knowledge of geographical/genealogical differences of particular regions and the ability to apply this knowledge in gathering, analyzing and evaluating evidence, and in presenting genealogical findings.

Some persons have certain natural ability which fits nicely into genealogical research. They have inquisitive and truth-seeking minds and are not frightened of detail. They have the ability to analyze a problem and utilize the facts in solving other problems, whereas others might pass over the information in disinterest and wonderment. Some of these qualities can be learned. Interested persons should apply themselves and see if they possess these qualities, and, if so, they will be able to achieve to the greatest extent possible in genealogical research. If one does not possess all of the qualities, he still may achieve to a good degree in genealogical research, but he might produce to a greater extent in some other field. A knowledge of genealogical science can be useful to anyone, and can certainly bring much enjoyment and satisfaction in its pursuit. The ama-

teur may not desire to become as involved as the professional, but both should be qualified to conduct competent research.

The genealogist must be willing to work for many hours without any visible progress in his work and must be able to face defeat with a smile. In some instances he may put in hundreds of hours and find no pertinent genealogical facts while at other times he may locate considerable data in a relatively short period of time.

Whatever his findings, if he will make them known, he is making a contribution to science. In genealogy, the gathering of names, dates, places and information relating to kinship adds to the social sciences. When a researcher gathers fact and it does not solve a particular problem, he has not failed in research, though he may have failed in solving a particular problem. By his study, analysis, and gathering effort, he has added something to the field, if he will make that information known to others.

It is strange that we spend millions of dollars on scientific projects which often fail, and think nothing of it, for we have gained experience and knowledge which help us to advance in a particular area. However, if a person spends a few hundred dollars on genealogical research and does not trace his ancestry to "Father Adam," he is highly disappointed and often insulted.

It cost well over \$20 million and countless hours of research to locate the key to the composition of nylon, with many heart-breaking experiments conducted; but it is doubtful that anyone would say this search was a failure.

The same is true in genealogical research. We may spend hundreds of dollars seeking one name, but that information may some day provide the key to salvation and exaltation for many others. No price tag can be placed on such an effort.

The competent genealogist must love truth with a passion and perhaps the following statement by Wells summarizes what is required:

Trust no statements without verification.
Test all things as rigorously as possible.
Keep no secrets.
Attempt no monopolies.
Give out one's best modestly and plainly,
Serving no other end but *TRUTH*.²

¹Donald L. Jacobus, *Genealogy as Pastime and Profession* (New Haven, Conn.: The Tuttle, Morhouse and Taylor Co., 1930), pp. 39-40.

²H. G. Wells, *The Outline of History*, (New York: Garden City Publishing Co., Inc., 1920), p. 733.



Part I

FUNDAMENTALS OF GENEALOGY



Chapter 1

GENEALOGY, THE DARK CONTINENT

There is nothing more frustrating than a conversation with someone who employs the same terms you do, but who actually seems to speak another language. It is more confusing than trying to communicate with one who speaks an unknown tongue; the words have a familiar ring but they just don't register. The age-old problem of defining terms has probably caused more bitter political and religious dissension and argument than any other issue. The eternal verity of this bewildering matter is graphically pointed out in the following statement from Abraham Lincoln:

"We all declare for liberty; but in using the same word we do not all mean the same thing. With some the word liberty may mean for each man to do as he pleases with himself, and the product of his labor; while with others the same word may mean for some men to do as they please with other men, and the product of other men's labor. . . . The shepherd drives the wolf from the sheep's throat, for which the sheep thank the shepherd as a liberator, while the wolf denounces him for the same act as the destroyer of liberty, especially as the sheep was a black one. Plainly the sheep and the wolf are not agreed upon a definition of the word liberty; and precisely the same difference prevails today among us human creatures, even in the North, and all professing to love liberty. . . ."¹

This same confusion of terms represents one of the major stumbling blocks in genealogical research today. Such terms as "baptism for the dead," "temple work," "salvation for the dead," "books of remembrance," "workshops," "family group sheets," and "genealogical research" are constantly before us in a perplexing array as though they were synonyms.

It becomes all important to define our terms in detail. Four general areas need to be examined: (1) salvation; in-

cluding salvation for both the living and the dead; (2) the priesthood, whose unlimited power makes the plan of salvation possible; (3) our responsibility in the plan as a church and as individuals; and (4) the role of genealogy in this eternal scheme.

Salvation for the living and the dead. The Latter-day Saints interpret salvation to mean the universal gift bestowed upon mankind through the sacrifice of Jesus Christ in His death and in His resurrection. The connotation of this definition is that all men, whether living or dead, have been saved—saved from death.

Since salvation or the resurrection will include both “the just and unjust,” a more explicit term is needed to denote the full measure of progress which can be achieved by the righteous. In Mormon theology, exaltation is the designation reserved for the greatest goal this life has to offer—godhood. Exaltation is obtainable by all who comply with the threefold responsibility of having faith in the Lord, Jesus Christ, living a good life and receiving the saving ordinances of the gospel.

The basic ordinances in the order of their reception include (1) baptism and confirmation, (2) ordination to the Melchizedek priesthood, (3) washing and anointing, (4) the endowment and (5) the sealing, or new and everlasting covenant of eternal marriage.

Dependent upon one’s faithfulness, each of these ordinances will provide some eternal progression, but it is necessary to have all of them to receive a full measure of exaltation.

It is the last ordinance, the sealing, which is the most important of all; for the Lord has revealed that “no one can reject this covenant and be permitted to enter into my glory.” (D&C 132:4.) The sealing is the capstone of all the ordinances and will entitle men to become “gods, because they have all power, and the angels are subject unto them.” (D&C 132:20.) Without this final ordinance, no matter how many of the rest are received or how exemplary the life, man’s goal lies far short of godhood for “from

henceforth [they] are not gods, but are angels of God forever and ever." (D&C 132:17.)

"Salvation for the dead" then, is a term indicating that exaltation can also be received by those who did not have the chance of knowing the gospel in this life. Inherent in this idea is the vicarious administration of the saving ordinances predicated upon the individual faithfulness and merit of the dead. Thus, all men, whether living or dead, will be given the opportunity to become as God is.

Surely, as the words of Orson Pratt indicate, this "...is the most charitable doctrine that was ever preached to the nations of the earth." As Orson Pratt further remarks, it should also be "...unnecessary for us to multiply passages on a subject that ought to be familiar to all the Latter-day Saints."²

Recognizing, however, that many interested non-members will be desirous of knowing whether or not the Bible supports vicarious administration of ordinances, let us briefly examine the scriptures as they pertain to this idea as far as baptism is concerned.

Christ declared to all that "Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God." (John 3:5.) Lest man find this too difficult to believe, he further states that "narrow is the way" to eternal life (Matt. 7:14) and that one who tries to enter by "some other way, the same is a thief and a robber." (John 10:1.) But in turn, we know that our Savior was not harshly condemning forever all those who never had or would have the opportunity to hear these truths while living, for "the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God: and they that hear shall live." (John 5:25.) Peter informs us that this was accomplished during the three days that Christ's body lay in the tomb while "he went and preached unto the spirits in prison." (1 Peter 3:18-20.) "That they might be judged according to men in the flesh" (1 Peter 4:6).

The first judgment to be passed upon men in the flesh before they can gain access to the Kingdom of God is whether or not they have entered into the narrow way of

baptism. It is only natural to expect that baptism for the dead would have been installed as part of the early Church's practices after Christ's death and mission to the spirits of the dead. Hence, we find that this custom was so common and well established among the early saints that Paul found it a handy reference to prove the eternal truth of the resurrection to the church at Corinth. He informed them that "what shall they do which are baptized for the dead, if the dead rise not at all?" (1 Cor. 15:29.)

Powers of the Priesthood. At this point, many Latter-day Saints may feel that the foregoing is obvious and that the only scripture which remains to be quoted is Malachi 4:5-6. The great latter-day mission of Elijah the prophet in turning "the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers" is often loosely conceived as our right to do baptisms for the dead in this dispensation. It is true that Malachi was privileged to see our day; and it is true that in accordance with prophecy Elijah revealed himself unto Joseph Smith in the Kirtland Temple in 1836, but not in behalf of the dead as is commonly misunderstood. We should not confuse Elijah's mission with baptism for the dead, salvation for the dead, or even genealogy, as it was a far more important mission for both the living and the dead. None of these ordinances could be performed for the living or the dead until the priesthood was first restored, and Elijah was actually part of this restoration.

But, some will reply, the priesthood was restored in May and June of 1829 by John the Baptist and Peter, James, and John. This answer is only partially true for there were many messengers needed in such a tremendous undertaking as the restoration of the priesthood, and the most important keys to the priesthood could only be restored in a temple, as is indicated in Section 110 of the Doctrine and Covenants. Thus, Elijah was the last messenger in this great plan, and only then (April 3, 1836) was the prophet Joseph informed that "the keys of this dispensation are committed into your hands; and by this ye may know that the great and dreadful day of the Lord is near, even at the doors." (D&C 110:16.) Indeed, six years before 1829, Joseph was informed

that the Lord "will reveal unto you the Priesthood, by the hand of Elijah the prophet." (D&C 2:1.)

The spirit of Elijah is not just some influence to inspire men to "do genealogy." Elijah's latter-day mission cannot be truly understood in its fullness until one really understands what is meant by priesthood. That this point should even have to be raised will be upsetting to some, for we all know that the priesthood is the authority of God delegated to man to act in God's behalf.

True as this statement is, does it really define priesthood or merely describe one of its facets? Ordination to the Melchizedek priesthood not only bestows the privilege to act in God's name, but literally the right to control the greatest spiritual and physical force in the universe! Admittedly, a full understanding of the priesthood may not be possible now nor do we mean that one should delve into the mysteries, for we agree with Paul that one should "foolish and unlearned questions avoid, knowing that they do gender strifes." (I Tim. 2:23.)

However, that the priesthood is more than just the right to serve in the ordinances of the Church was shown by Joseph Smith in his inspired version of the Bible where Genesis 14:30-31 is translated as:

That everyone being ordained after this order and calling should have power, by faith, to break mountains, to divide the seas, to dry up waters, to turn them out of their course; to put at defiance the armies of nations, to divide the earth, to break every band, to stand in the presence of God; to do all things according to his will, according to his command, subdue principalities and powers; and this by the will of the Son of God which was from before the foundation of the world.

Brigham Young taught that it is the power of God by which all things were created, exist, and are controlled. "It is that system which brings worlds into existence and peoples them, gives them their revolutions . . . and by which they . . . go into a higher state of existence."³

Orson Pratt gave a good summation of it when he wrote:

The Priesthood of God is the great supreme, legal authority that governs the inhabitants of all redeemed and glorified worlds. In it is included all power to create worlds, to ordain fixed and permanent laws for the regulation of the materials in all their varied operations, whether acting as particles, as masses, as worlds, or as clusters of worlds. It is that power that formed the minerals, the vegetables, and the animals in all their infinite varieties which exist upon our globe. It is that authority that reveals laws for the government of intelligent beings—that rewards the obedient and punishes the disobedient—that ordains principalities, powers, and kingdoms to carry out its righteous administrations throughout all dominions.⁴

The priesthood is the motivating power of the Church, and the Kingdom of God cannot exist without it. Its observable functions during mortality are to assist men to gain the Celestial Kingdom in order that they might become gods. It holds the keys to all spiritual blessings, revelations, and the right to see God. No one can receive exaltation and godhood unless he receives the priesthood and magnifies it. It is truly the right of man to work in God's name for the salvation and benefit of all mankind and it encompasses all known power. It is inherent in the Godhead and delegated by Them to man, but it operates only by love and according to Their will as this power cannot be used indiscriminately for one's own pleasure.

The supreme right of this power granted to man concerns the keys of sealing or "the keys of the Kingdom" so that "whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven." (Matt. 16:19.) Isaiah refers to the same great privilege when he tells us that whoever possesses this key "shall open, and none shall shut; and he shall shut, and none shall open." (Isa. 22:22.) This, then, was the mission of Elijah, to restore the capstone of the priesthood, the sealing keys, so that all of the rights and privileges of the priesthood would rest upon our modern prophets including the power to seal families eternally, or in other words to perform all of the saving ordinances needed for both the living and the dead.

That Joseph Smith fully understood Elijah's great latter-

day mission to be of utmost importance for the salvation of both the living and the dead can be seen in his comment on "turn the heart of the fathers" wherein he states: "Now, the word turn here should be translated bind, or seal," and that:

The spirit, power, and calling of Elijah is that ye have power to hold the key of the revelations, ordinances, oracles, powers and endowments of the fulness of the Melchizedek Priesthood and of the Kingdom of God on the earth; and to receive, obtain, and perform all the ordinances belonging to the Kingdom of God.⁵

To associate Elijah's power only with ordinances for the dead and genealogy is to do the restoration of the priesthood an injustice. Even to call it the power to seal families for eternity is but to catch a glimpse of its overall importance to the priesthood. The keys to this great power can be held only by one man at one time; the living prophet who stands at the head of this Church. To deny this is to negate the mission of Elijah, and this is the simple truth which all of the apostate groups have overlooked to their eternal condemnation.

Now the great and grand secret of the whole matter, and the *sum-mum bonum* of the whole subject that is lying before us, consists in obtaining the powers of the Holy Priesthood. For him to whom these keys are given there is no difficulty in obtaining a knowledge of facts in relation to the salvation (exaltation) of the children of men; both as well for the dead as for the living. (D&C 128:11.)

It is more than fitting that Elijah should have been chosen to be the bearer of these keys, for few prophets have exercised the spiritual and physical forces of the priesthood and its sealing powers as has he. This is the man of God who sealed the heavens, that no rain should fall on a wicked Israel; who unloosed the widow's barrel of meal and cruse of oil, that there would be food until the drought was over; who called the widow's son back from the dead; who called down fire from heaven to consume the drenched sacrifice and destroy the priests of Baal; who opened the heavens until they were "black with clouds and wind, and there was a great rain" to save repentant Israel; who again called down fire twice more on the captains of fifty sent against him; who smote the Jordan that the waters were

divided; and who was finally caught up in a whirlwind as he was translated to continue his mission without suffering death!¹⁶

In our enthusiasm to demonstrate the mercy of God toward all men, there is a tendency to treat exaltation for the dead as something apart and distinct from exaltation for the living. This is unfortunate, as a trend seems to be developing with many which creates a double standard wherein one is concerned with his own eternal progress while looking upon any vicarious ordinances that he performs as some sort of favor for the dead. This constitutes a failure to fully comprehend the ordinances needed for exaltation, especially the sealing ordinance.

Although the full reason cannot yet be understood, it is known that the family is the unit on which the Lord bases His kingdom, and it can only be maintained through the sealing power. Simply sealing man and woman for eternity does not suffice, as we cannot be exalted without our worthy families of the past; nor they without us. Therefore, godhood is available only to those who have done all they could to have themselves and all their worthy dead sealed as one grand eternal family. This is the patriarchal order; father over son, father over son, etc., with Father Adam over mankind, the Lord Jesus Christ over him and finally God the Eternal Father over all. It is part of a two-way street upon which our mutual exaltation is dependent.

This is what Paul meant when he declared that the fathers of old "died in faith, not having received the promises" and accordingly "they without us should not be made perfect." (Heb. 11:13, 40.) Referring to this last phrase, Joseph Smith stated that "this doctrine was the burden of the scriptures. Those saints who neglect it, in behalf of their deceased relatives, do so at the peril of their own salvation."¹⁷ That he further understood exaltation to be a two-way street between us and our dead can be seen in section 128 of the Doctrine and Covenants where he tells us:

. . . these are principles in relation to the dead and the living that

cannot be lightly passed over, as pertaining to our salvation. For their salvation is necessary and essential to our salvation, as Paul says concerning the fathers—that they without us cannot be made perfect—neither can we without our dead be made perfect. (D&C 128:15.)

Church and Individual Responsibility. This concept puts the matter of exaltation for both the living and the dead on an individual plane. Each of us must comply with all the requisites for exaltation, including being sealed to our ancestors. Our own progress will not necessarily be blocked if our dead are not baptized and endowed, but it will be if we are not sealed to one another; and they cannot be sealed to us unless someone initiates the preliminary ordinances for them also. The same is true in this life. The progress of each of us is not only an individual problem but a social one. We seek to mutually aid each other through the body of the Church as well as by distributing the good news of the plan of salvation through our missionary activities to those who have never heard it.

The question then arises: Does the Church have a similar responsibility to the dead? That it definitely does is the testimony of this dispensation. As Christ inaugurated this work in the meridian of time, the fulness of this plan was to be reserved for the last dispensation as prophesied by Malachi. This knowledge has brought forth the following psalms of praise from such prophets as:

Orson Pratt

The dispensation in which we live was intended to benefit not only the generation living, but also past generations.⁸

Wilford Woodruff

We have to go to enter those temples and redeem our dead—not only the dead of our own family, but the dead of the whole spirit world. . . . This is the great work of the last dispensation—the redemption of the living and the dead.⁹

The First Presidency in 1907

Our motives are not selfish or earthbound; we contemplate the human race, past, present and to come as immortal beings, for whose salvation it is our mission to labor, and to this work, broad

as eternity, and deep as the love of God, we devote ourselves, now and forever. Amen.¹⁰

John A. Widtsoe informed us, even before the present correlation plan, that the priesthood of the Church had a threefold duty: "(1) To keep the members of the Church in the way of their full duty, (2) To teach the Gospel to those who have not yet heard it or accepted it, and (3) To provide for the dead, through the ordinances of the temple, the means by which the dead, if obedient, may participate in the blessings that are enjoyed by those who have won citizenship in the Kingdom of God."¹¹

The Church provides for the dead by building temples, gathering genealogical materials, processing the names, and encouraging temple attendance on the part of the membership to act as proxies. The Church may even initiate ordinances of baptism and endowment for individuals as is seen in the present "Records Tabulation Program," but here her duty rests, for the sealing ordinance is part of our personal exaltation which must be accomplished through individual responsibility and action.

Many people think that service to one action or responsibility frees them from the other, but this is not the case. Certainly, we must aid the Church in its mission to the living and the dead, but to have the Church do all the work would take away one's free agency. Exaltation is dependent upon individual actions and deeds. It is time each of us reviewed our position and judged our genealogical success by the number of ancestral lines to which we are sealed and not the number of times we have attended the temple. Temple attendance is a necessary and worthwhile action of any Church member and accomplishes good, but one's salvation and exaltation are dependent on temple ordinances on behalf of himself and of his own relatives. To paraphrase Christ (Matt. 23:23) "the one we ought to have done and the other cannot be left undone," but it was the individual responsibility of being sealed to one's own dead to which the prophet Joseph referred when he said, "the greatest responsibility in this world that God has laid upon us is to seek after our dead."¹²

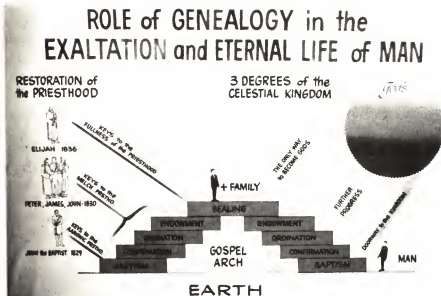
It is this same sealing responsibility that brings genealogy into the picture. The term is actually a combination of two Greek words, *genea*, meaning race and *logy*, meaning a study or science. The latter term is generally applied to fields of science or departments of study and had its origin in "logos." A definition of genealogy could then be stated as "the study of race to determine one's ancestry."

The Role of Genealogy. Genealogy is a means to an end in LDS theology. That end is not merely salvation for the dead nor even the performing of some of the ordinances, but it concerns itself with the obligation of each of us to be sealed to our dead and not to someone else's. Take away that duty, even though baptisms and endowments for the dead were still performed, and there would be no need for genealogy in the Church. Any clerk can extract names, dates, and places requisite to the performance of baptism and the endowment, but the genealogist provides the proof of relationship which allows the sealing of parents to each other and of children to parents. Elijah's mission was to restore the sealing power, and the whole reason for genealogy is to be sure that we are sealed to the proper people.

Genealogy is an art and a science and it is not proposed that every member of the Church should seek professional status in the work. He should assist the Church in its general responsibilities and should see that he is sealed to the proper persons. He should gain sufficient knowledge of the subject to know when his individual responsibility is accomplished, whether he does the work himself or whether his agent does it. Many persons have been sealed to the wrong line and have not recognized this until someone else has questioned the work and carefully investigated the situation.

If the individual does not desire to apply himself to genealogical research, but desires to engage the services of someone else, he should have sufficient knowledge to evaluate and analyze that person's work so that the proper sealings take place. In this each person has the right of personal inspiration and guidance from the Holy Spirit, and after he has reviewed the work accomplished in his behalf he has the

right of the Spirit to bear testimony of the truth of the matter.



Salvation-Exaltation Chart

The sealing need is met through genealogy, and its single importance should be clearly defined. Not to do so causes a proliferation of activities with the danger of ignoring the most important duty and could cause a person to become frustrated. Perhaps this could be likened to Paul's frustration when he said "avoid foolish questions, and genealogies." (Titus 3:9.) We know the importance of pushing on to the more important works, for you will note that Paul did not say we should avoid genealogy but "foolish genealogies." As long as sealings are all-important to the exaltation of both the living and the dead, and as long as the Lord continues to have us learn "line upon line,

precept upon precept" and to have us do all we can with the physical abilities given to us before expecting divine intervention, we will need genealogy. Therefore, we must profit from the mistakes of the past and make scientific genealogy possible in order to accomplish our real goal.

Members of the Church should do all in their power to aid the Church program, but on an individual level not every member need be a researcher; rather, every member should be represented in research. Each could start a personal program to see that the following objectives are accomplished:

1. Be sealed to your own spouse and record this information properly. Then teach your children to do likewise. Not only is this of utmost importance to your own progress, but it enables others, including future generations, to concentrate on continuing with genealogical efforts on common ancestors rather than wasting time verifying work already done.

2. Know the basic reasons for genealogy in the Church, and know enough about scientific genealogy to judge whether or not yours is being done correctly.

3. Join or form a family organization of all interested parties who would like to see scientific research performed on common ancestry. It is not necessary for everyone actually to do research, but the burden of hiring professional services can be more easily borne unitedly. More important, one can determine whether there are any in his family who are naturally inclined toward this field and can inspire such to become professionals or at least able amateurs. This is particularly desirable for youth who are talented in the social sciences, as such are very adaptable to genealogy and will have a natural flair and interest in it. Thus, the family organization would not only be providing for its own needs, but would be helping the entire field of genealogy by supplying it with new blood on a professional level. What better way for a budding professional to launch himself than to find his first employer in his own family organization! Since each family will have many different

geographical areas of interest, each requiring specialization, this program would be expandable.

4. Encourage the formulation and use of professional standards through personal example and moral support. Arouse the gifted and assist them in receiving qualified training to become the future leaders.

Since genealogy is a technical subject, many have become discouraged by the difficulties involved. This, coupled with disinterest and apathy, has led to the question why such work cannot be put off entirely to the millennium. This is regrettable, for not only has genealogy made great strides in the last ten years, but we have also been informed that there is no time to waste. The prophet Joseph Smith told us that even "if the whole Church should go with their might to save their dead, seal their posterity, gather their living friends, and spend none of their time in behalf of the world, they would hardly get through before the night would come when no man can work."¹³ Wilford Woodruff was even more forceful: "It takes as much to save a dead man as a living one. The eyes of these millions of people are watching over these Latter-day Saints. Have we any time to spend in trying to get rich and in neglecting our dead? I tell you no."¹⁴

There is no place in our philosophy for those who cry: "my mission is to the living, let the dead care for themselves." Without an appreciation and concern for the past, it is impossible to understand the future or even fully appreciate the present. Eternity cannot be partitioned into neat little packages of man-made time. Mankind must be viewed as an all-embracing perpetual entity.¹⁵

In keeping with this spirit and the fact that this subject cannot be put off just because it is difficult and time-consuming, is Robert M. Hutchins' defense of a liberal education. That time is no excuse for delay is ably summed up in the following reference:

When Marshal Lyautey was in Africa, he asked his gardener to plant a certain tree, the foliage of which he like very much. The gardener said that a tree of this kind took two hundred years to

reach maturity. "In that case," said the marshal, "there is no time to lose. Plant it today." ¹⁶

It is hoped that this chapter has imparted a clearer understanding of why genealogy plays an important role in LDS theology. As the chapter opened with a quote from Lincoln, so let us close with another to demonstrate our overall goal. One of Lincoln's favorite stories concerned the three orthodox ministers who met to refute a Universalist. The first minister opened up the attack with: "'And now comes a preacher preaching a doctrine that all men shall be saved. But, my brethren, let us hope for better things.'" ¹⁷ The same could be said of the idea of every member of the Church becoming a professional genealogist. Rather, let us hope for the better thing of developing a sufficient number of professionals to lead dedicated members. With this as our guiding light, let us examine what scientific genealogy really is.

¹Carl Sandburg, *Abraham Lincoln*, (New York: Dell Publishing Company Inc., 1960), III, 522.

²*Masterful Discourses and Writings of Orson Pratt*, comp. N. B. Lundwall, (Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft, Inc., 1962), pp. 261-87. This is one of the best of early sermons on the subject and is highly recommended to the serious student who would like full treatment of this doctrine.

³John A. Widtsoe, *Discourses of Brigham Young*, (Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1954), p. 130.

⁴Pratt, *op. cit.* p. 316.

⁵*Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith*, ed. Joseph Fielding Smith (3rd ed., Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret News Press, 1942), pp. 330, 337.

⁶Compare Helaman 10:6-11.

⁷Brigham H. Roberts, *A Comprehensive History of the Church* (Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret News Press, 1930), p. 92.

⁸Pratt, *op. cit.*, p. 267.

⁹*Journal of Discourses*, 21:192, 194.

¹⁰Gustave O. Larson, *Outline History of Utah and the Mormons* (2nd ed. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1961), p. 265.

¹¹John A. Widtsoe, *Priesthood and Church Government*, (Rev. ed. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1964), p. 150.

¹²Smith, *op. cit.* p. 356.

¹³Smith, p. 330.

¹⁴*Journal of Discourses* 22:34 as quoted in *The Discourses of Wilford Woodruff*, (ed. G. Homer Durham, Salt Lake City: Bookcraft, 1946), p. 148.

¹⁵It is interesting to note that even though work for the dead could not be started until Jesus Christ broke the bonds of death and preached to the spirits in prison, the Lord had revealed to His children of old that they should keep genealogies. This was

necessitated by the use of the patriarchal order in the priesthood at that time. It is also possible that this early stress on genealogy was in preparation for Christ's dispensation so that the names of their dead would be readily available for ordinance work. (See Neh. 7:5, I Chron. 5:1, and Ezra 2:62. Paraphrasing Ezra, let us hope that the time never comes when we shall be barred from the priesthood for not having reckoned our genealogy!)

¹⁶Robert M. Hutchins, *The Great Conversation*, (Chicago: Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1952), p. 60.

¹⁷Sandburg, *op. cit.* p. 617.

Chapter 2

SCIENTIFIC GENEALOGY

The Scientific Method. "How hard a matter it is to sift out ye truth in these matters of Genealogye." If such was the case in 1651 when Sir William Dugdale was a keen observer of the genealogical scene, one might expect that genealogy would be even more difficult some three hundred years later.

Fortunately, just the reverse is true because of the advances which have been made during the past few years. In fact, the most difficult task is not genealogy but converting people to systematic or scientific genealogy. Far too many would-be genealogists are attacking their genealogical problems in a haphazard manner without regard to method, procedure or system. The law of chance is their guide, and their success fails to materialize except in very rare instances. Their frustration and confusion is compounded with each effort and finally the result is abandonment of the work in remorse and sorrow.

The law of chance can be a fascinating study within itself and perhaps some of our modern machines such as the electronic computer have helped to narrow the understandable limits of chance to the point that some feel it does not exist. This may be the thinking of certain genealogists who play the game of genealogy strictly by chance.

The chance of walking down Fifth Avenue in New York City and meeting a first cousin is proportional to all the factors involved, which would be quite hard to enumerate; but with the number of people in the United States and with respect to the number in one particular family, it wouldn't be hard to see that the odds against such a chance

meeting would be very high. Yet, many genealogists do research strictly by chance. They start to gather all names of a type similar to theirs, with the hope that one might prove to be that of an ancestor. They search records of certain jurisdictions without a knowledge that their people actually resided there. They search a particular genealogical publication, with the hope that an ancestor will be recorded, without studying its time or reference coverage. In rare instances a person may chance onto valuable genealogical information, but the professional genealogist must systematically approach his objectives if he is to have continued success.

Some of the best advice given concerning the understanding of the scientific method was put forth by Einstein when he said, "If you want to know the essence of scientific method don't listen to what a scientist may tell you. *Watch what he does.*"¹

Science begins with the *observation of selected parts of nature*, and the scientist must look at reality to decide whether or not the things of nature actually exist. He cannot take someone else's word for it. Therefore, authority in science cannot be taken literally, but one must seek out and find the answer for himself. This can become an axiom of the competent genealogist. He should *seek out the answer from the facts* and should not base his statements on guess and hearsay. Authority as the scientist knows it should not be taken too literally in genealogy, however, for if we followed it to the letter, it would mean that each researcher would prove again for himself each fact by gathering, analyzing, and evaluating it. It is not wisdom to duplicate research well done and properly documented, but the idea of proving the proposed truths to oneself is indeed wise. It is highly possible that a re-evaluation of the facts in any particular case might reveal clues to the new researcher which did not occur to the former.

The scientific method suggests that it is impossible to observe the whole world at a glance and attempt to understand it completely, for we would be lost in the maze of the unknown. It is necessary, therefore, to take steps to *analyze*

and synthesize the information. The genealogist could well follow these suggestions, and, rather than trying to solve all his genealogical problems at once, he could gather facts pertaining to selected parts and better reach sound conclusions. Many persons who enter the field think genealogy is simply a matter of checking a published book or two and there to find all ancestral information. In reality genealogical research is a long, painstaking program of search, and of analysis repeated over and over again.

Not all scientific investigation follows the same pattern but in general the scientific method is to (1) gather data, (2) classify and organize it, (3) generalize from the data observed, (4) verify the generalizations, (5) report or record the findings, and (6) announce or publish the results. It is proposed that the principles of the scientific method can be used to better accomplish one's genealogical research and thereby help to fulfill one's genealogical objectives.

Is Genealogy an Exact Science? Perhaps one of the best articles relating to genealogy as an exact science was one written over 30 years ago by Donald Lines Jacobus, here reprinted with his permission. It gives excellent insight into this question.

Science is merely a word of Latin derivation meaning "knowledge." If we except mathematics, which is not so much a science in itself as a mode of measurement employed in all the sciences, there are no exact sciences. The more definitely measurement can be employed, the more exact a science becomes. Hence, astronomy and physics may be considered as reasonably exact sciences, though even here when we approach infinite magnitude, as of distance in astronomy, or infinite smallness, as of electrons in physics, and our measuring devices are not sufficiently acute, we discover a wide margin of inexactitude.

Sciences which relate wholly or in part to human nature are considered the least exact. History and biography may be exact as to dates, but insofar as they deal with human motives, the "why" of historical and personal events, they can never hope to be absolutely correct. Genealogy, as one of the sciences in which human nature is a factor, is considered to be one of the less exact sciences. As practiced by many of its devotees, it is certainly one of the least exact. Yet it is entitled to rank higher, provided only that proper scientific methods be pursued.

The real object of genealogy is to establish lines of descent of human beings. Whether the motives of the inquirer be to make a study of heredity, or to join a certain society by proving descent from a qualifying ancestor, or mere curiosity to learn the identity of one's forebears, the line of descent is the essential thing. All else is incidental.

Among these incidentals are dates. These are important for purposes of identification of ancestors; they are the measuring device which helps to make genealogy an exact science. No one who lacks a mathematical mind can hope to become a genealogist of the very first rank, for it is necessary to deal with dates constantly.

The dates in themselves may not be utterly exact. The family Bible may differ a day or two from the town record of birth; it may even differ by an exact year. The date of death may not be precisely known, except that it falls between the making and proving of the man's will. Yet the dates, if ascertained and copied with meticulous care, are usually exact enough for the larger purpose of identification of persons.

Biologically, the genealogist is concerned with proving a line of descent; which means, proving the parentage of one individual at a time and then the parentage of his parents, and so on, step by step. How exact is this process?

We may as well concede, at the start, that the paternity of every child in a human pedigree is a matter of faith, or belief, not of proven fact. Although the present writer, like most genealogists, has excellent reasons for the assumption that an extremely high percentage of children were actually the offspring of their reputed parents, it is hardly necessary to call attention to the fact that a single infidelity on the part of an ancestress would be sufficient to invalidate the paternal ancestry back of that generation. Hence, biologically considered, it must be granted that genealogy is not as exact a science as could be desired, since an entirely unknown margin of error always exists, at least as a theoretical possibility.

The genealogist has no means of going behind the official records. The pity is, that he does not more consistently pursue the policy of depending on the official records for his conclusions. Every science must admit the possibility of a margin of error. But in most of the sciences, conclusions are reached only after the collection of all facts which might affect the matter, and after experimentation; which, in genealogy, means the setting up of hypotheses, the testing of these hypotheses by known facts, and the successful elimination of all but one hypothesis which is then accepted as the only one which fits and explains the facts.

When these scientific methods are employed, by a genealogist of

sufficient knowledge and training, genealogy becomes a reasonably exact science. Let us consider an example of scientific methods, to illustrate how they work.

Peter Gubbins appeared, let us say, in the town of Straitsville, where his children were born between 1800 and 1820. The line has been traced back to this Peter, and his origin is sought. Using the splendid facilities that are now available to the genealogist in many of the older sections of the country, it is found that a Peter, son of John Gubbins, was born in 1775 in Freetown, some 50 miles away. The dates fit, but the identity of the two Peters is a mere assumption or guess, if we stop here.

We therefore collect every atom of evidence concerning Peter which is available in the records of Freetown, or at the county seat, or at the state library. We find that his father John died in 1798, leaving a will in which he gave specified realty to each of his sons, including Peter. In the land records, we find that in 1801 Peter Gubbins "of Straitsville" sold this land, the description of the property proving it to be the same which was given to Peter in his father's will. If we are lucky, Peter's deed may even specify that the land "was set to me from the estate of my father John Gubbins deceased." In any case the cumulative evidence is sufficient to prove that our Peter Gubbins of Straitsville was the son of John whose birth was recorded at Freetown in 1775. We are assuming, of course, that the Straitsville records have been thoroughly searched, and indicate that only one Peter Gubbins was living there in the period from 1800 to 1820; also that the U.S. Census shows but one Peter as head of a family in Straitsville in 1800 and 1810.

In the above illustrative case, we have attained a degree of proof sufficient even for legal purposes; we are no longer relying on guesses. "Quite unnecessary," the amateur may retort; "the guess was correct in the first place." Very good: then let us consider another example, starting with the same premises. Again we seek the origin of a Peter Gubbins who appeared as a young adult at Straitsville in 1800; and again we find a Peter, son of John, born at Freetown in 1775. Again we make the same guess; but if we make a thorough search of the Freetown records, we shall discover that this time our guess is wrong. For the Freetown records may as easily (in this second example) reveal the following facts:

The will of John in 1798 gave land to his son Peter, but Peter did not sell it until 1805, when he called himself "Peter Gubbins of Freetown." The description of the land proves the identity of this man with the son of John, and since he was still of Freetown after our Peter settled in Straitsville, he was apparently not the Peter we are seeking to trace. However, our search of the deeds shows that in 1810 Peter Gubbins "of Straitsville" sold all his right to realty in

Freetown, reserving the dower interest of Widow Dorothea Gubbins. The birth of this second Peter is not found recorded, but in one of the parishes of Freetown we find the baptism of Peter, son of Thomas Gubbins, in 1778. We find that a Thomas Gubbins died intestate in 1808, administration being granted to his widow Dorothea; her dower was set out to her, but she failed to present for record a distribution to the heirs.

Here the only hypothesis that fits the known facts is that our Peter of Straitsville was the son of Thomas baptized in 1778, and that two years after his father's death he sold his interest in the property inherited from Thomas, reserving the life use which Dorothea held as her dower right. The case is genealogically proved by these records, and our first guess has been proved incorrect.

Printed sources, even the best of them, too frequently contain errors. The only reasonably certain sources of information are the contemporary records, which a man made of himself and his family while he was living, or which were made concerning him by official recorders.

There are several reasons why scientific methods have been unpopular with many genealogical students and writers. First in responsibility is that all-too-human trait of laziness. It is much easier to make a "likely guess" than to collect data with infinite labor and attention to detail, and thereafter expend real thought on the analysis of the data. Second, comes the factor of sheer ignorance. Many compilers of family histories quite evidently have no knowledge of the existence of documentary archives, and assume that the only way the early generations of their family can be put together is by accepting what little is to be found in print and guessing at connections.

A third and very important factor is that of expense. Many amateur genealogists and compilers cannot afford the cost of thorough research in documentary sources. With this factor, the present writer has an understanding sympathy. Yet it is an old maxim that "whatever is worth doing at all is worth doing well," and one may be entitled to ask whether it never occurs to perpetrators of the worst genealogical atrocities to give consideration to this maxim. And it may be observed that, despite the lack of funds to compile a worthwhile genealogy, the compilers nearly always seem able to raise the funds to publish their productions.

For the professional genealogist, as for the amateur, there are valid excuses for failure to take advantage of the opportunities for original research. The professional, dependent upon his work for a livelihood, is restricted by the limitations of cost set by his client, and these limitations frequently do not permit as thorough a search as should be made. Errors made by professionals very often are due

to the fact that, to keep within authorized limits of expense, they were forced to rely to a greater extent than they desired on printed sources of information. No one is responsible for this situation, for a large number of those who employ the services of genealogists are not people of large wealth.

A final reason for the unpopularity of scientific methods in genealogy is the romantic temperament of some of those who pursue genealogy as an avocation or a hobby. To people of that type, scientific methods are a bore. It irritates them to be told that a line of descent, innocently accepted from an unmeritorious printed source, is incorrect. They like that ancestral line, and intend to keep it. Denial or question of its accuracy seems to them purely destructive and negative. With people of this temperament, genealogy is not a serious study; it is a mere diversion, and they derive more pleasure from the exercise of their imaginative talent than they could from grubbing for facts. They believe what they want to believe, regardless of facts and are scornful of evidence. Let us concede, without argument, that "genealogists" of this type are entitled to their opinions; just as those who believe that the earth is flat are entitled to that opinion. It is entirely natural that these temperamental enthusiasts should oppose scientific methods, and that with the uninformed their opinions may have weight.

It must be confessed, in view of such chaotic conditions, that genealogy in this country today is very far from being an exact science, although the many workers in this field who now employ scientific methods are doing much to make it one.²

This article is, without a doubt, one of the most lucid explanations of the place of genealogy in the field of science that has been written. Mr. Jacobus is well qualified to give such a thorough and true discussion of the subject because of his keen mind and his devotion to the subject for the major part of his lifetime. Every genealogist who desires to become a qualified and competent researcher should read the article and ponder the truths which are given.

Barriers to Scientific Research. Genealogy has an even greater role to fulfill than is often conceived, and in order for it to achieve its proper place, genealogists might well use the scientific method. A concerted attempt should be made by all of us to remove barriers that stand in the way of such a goal. The barriers need to be identified and recognized before success can really be attained, and the

following information is presented with an idea of bringing the important points to the front.

As Robert M. Hutchins demonstrates in his essay on this subject:

If all that is meant is that a scientist is honest and careful and precise, and that he weighs all the evidence with discrimination before he pronounces judgment, then we can agree that the scientific method is the only method of reaching and testing the truth in any field. . . . critics have themselves frequently misunderstood the scientific method and have confused it with the aimless accumulation of data.³

Along this same line, a modern American philosopher, John E. Smith, has paraphrased Kant by saying, "Haphazard observations made in accordance with no rational plan can never yield reliable knowledge."⁴

Genealogy is not an exact science with formulas which can be applied from one case to the next. There are too many variables involved. The human element guarantees that no two genealogical problems will be exactly alike. One cannot be certain of why ancestors acted the way they did, why they moved at a given time or where, and why they appear in some records and not in others. The human mind and the influences upon it are too complex to understand fully. The same influences may react differently with each individual. However, patterns do emerge in the systematic process of laying bare, one by one, the facts and truths pertaining to the identity of one's ancestors. It is this human factor which makes genealogy a fascinating and intriguing field of study.

Genealogy is a science in the sense that history, sociology, political science, and economics can be considered sciences. Not only should genealogy take its rightful place among them, but it is closely related and can add much to the understanding of the other mentioned fields. Each field can aid and support the other. To be a good genealogist one needs a good understanding of related social sciences, such as history or geography. It has been stated that genealogy is the handmaid of history, but it may well be that the opposite is true also. It has been suggested

that each of these areas would benefit if their advocates knew more about the principles of scientific genealogy. The emphasis and procedures alone placed on the evaluation and classification of evidence in genealogy should merit the study of all the social sciences.

Genealogy has a greater meaning for the human race than is generally understood. It is more than just name gathering as a twilight pastime for the old folks, and it is more than the copying of family data, the searching of records, the filling out of forms or even of the writing of family histories. To the historian, it can make the past come alive, bringing him a correct understanding of his heritage and a true appreciation of the past, which will better enable him to cope with the present and the future. Through genealogy the historian can gain an insight into background history of entire regions. He can determine why certain inhabitants thought and acted as they did, what cultural strains helped to shape the community and government, and what roots their institutions had in the past.

Sociologists are quite disturbed over the attendant evils of the rapid-moving society in which we live. The unsettled state of our present society can be attributed, to a certain degree, to our past. Improved education and increased leisure time has caused man to be more aware of himself and desirous of knowing more about his own personal past, for we are, after all, the product of our ancestors. The sociologist is beginning to recognize the importance of genealogy in his studies; not only in understanding the source of this turbulent society but also as a tool to provide roots and ensure family solidarity. Surely man cannot believe in the existence of a superior race nor condone racial prejudice when repeatedly genealogy reveals what an interrelated group we really are. We cannot escape the family skeletons which inhabit our ancestral closets and we cannot escape the moments of glory vicariously furnished by some of our immortal ancestors. We owe a debt of gratitude to our ancestors for our very existence, in spite of what they may have been or done. Let us not judge, but simply learn from

them the best things of the past and put them into effect in the present so that the future may be better.

Scientific genealogy tends to be a leaven, in that it brings people closer together in an awareness and appreciation for their common heritage. Tolerance is a two-way street, and failure to understand this has caused many of the world's prolonged problems. Understanding the other person and trying to appreciate his culture and its differences are among our greatest needs, and genealogy will help us to do this. Many of our social evils are either caused directly by ignorance of the facts of history and genealogy or are kept alive far too long by their misapplication. Those who are completely ignorant of historical truths are not quite as dangerous as those who garble the past by taking a little here and a little there and twisting it to fit what they want to see. This distorted bias also takes place in genealogy and it represents a plague which scientific research can wipe out.

It is suggested that the following ten points delineate part of the dilemma which faces genealogy today. Many of them are peculiar to "Mormon" genealogical experience but are given that all might avoid similar pitfalls:

1. No amount of temple attendance nor preoccupation with such work as filling out family group records or related charts and forms, the construction of books of remembrance, or the recopying of another person's work will exonerate one from his responsibility to be sealed to his ancestors identified through systematic research. Certainly there is merit involved in temple attendance, and good comes from keeping busy; but these activities are *not* genealogy.

2. Incompleteness and inconsistencies in the Church Records Archives as well as in ward and branch records may cast a reflection on us as "a record-keeping people." Good record keeping obliges us all to maintain personal vigilance. We must cease to pay mere lip service to the importance of good records and must take an active part in keeping good records. Qualified persons should staff important clerical positions, and each individual should see that his own records are correct and worthy of acceptance.

3. The ordinary person is often misled and confused in relation to the so-called "direct line." He often insists that this refers only to his surname line, but he should understand that each ancestor played a part in descent and each should have his relative attention. To search only one's surname line is to misunderstand genealogy.

4. To engage in genealogical research from a biased standpoint is one of the greatest detriments to scientific research. It is genetically foolish, for men are equally descended from knaves and nobles. Aristocracy does not guarantee nobility nor does the greatness of an ancestor insure one's personal achievement. It is true that such social drives may institute the first interest in genealogy, but in the long run they are damaging if held up for glory. Often, lines which might have been easily traced are ignored and caution is discarded in the hurried attempt to climb the social ladder. This can lead to genealogical dishonesty and can cause irreparable damage to the field of scientific genealogy.

5. Being ashamed of one's ancestors is also damaging. One cannot judge the past by present moral standards, and to do so in genealogy is to thwart genealogical research and reduce it from a science to little more than a parlor game. He who claims that there were no illegitimacies in his ancestry has not engaged in research. If one is afraid of the past, it is questionable whether he is prepared to live in the present and future. Scientific genealogy cannot be a subjective hobby governed by the whims of society.

6. Possibly the greatest limiting factor in scientific genealogy is the lack of adequate records. The professional is constantly being confronted with pedigrees which purport to trace to "Father Adam," but to document such lineage is quite impossible. Due to a lack of sufficient records, it is almost impossible to trace one's European ancestry much earlier than 1500. In fact, in most of the Western world, an unbroken pedigree back to 1600 is noteworthy in achievement.

It is true that the pedigrees of European nobility may

be traced accurately into the medieval period, but even then it would be impossible to document much beyond the eleventh century. Tradition may make the extension possible to an earlier period, and though it is a valuable guide, it cannot be relied upon without supporting evidence from other sources. The medieval noblemen placed great emphasis on having a pedigree back to "Adam" and many were produced at that time to please them. Most of these tend to jump from Celtic and Scandinavian lines to a connection with some biblical figure. Such pedigrees were not necessarily tradition written down by the sincere, but were often fabricated to take advantage of the unwary or to please the arrogant.

Even if a connection to a biblical figure could be proven, it must be kept in mind that the Bible is not an original record, but one which is at least eight times removed from the original. In addition to this, the Hebrews were notorious for leaving out from their pedigrees ancestors of whom they disapproved. Since no reliable dates are provided with these pedigrees, they can be conveniently squeezed together to represent a father and son connection when in reality several generations may be missing.

7. There are also genealogists who would "out-science" scientific research. These persons attempt to make genealogical connections through genetic principles without adequate source information. Since it is mathematically possible to be related to anyone living in Europe a thousand years ago, they assume that no genealogical proof is necessary. We agree with the noted Harvard anthropologist that,

... by the laws of chance, essentially every person whose ancestry is at least half European can include Charlemagne in his family tree. But he is equally descended from the bandit hanged on the hill, from the half-witted serf, and from every other person living in A.D. 800 who left as many descendants as did Charlemagne.⁵

However, genealogy does not work by the laws of chance, but must proceed from the known to the unknown. Kluckhohn makes another interesting statement in his enthusiasm for genetic connections which is true on the surface but which demonstrates the need for other social sciences to

learn more of the methods and procedures of scientific genealogical research. He says:

When I was a student in England, I used to be annoyed at advertisements in British newspapers: "Americans! Descent traced to Edward III, £100!" I felt this was another evidence of the European playing upon the gullibility of my fellow countrymen. But, if the American could name a single ancestor in an English parish registry, the chances were good that his ancestry could be traced to Edward III, or to any other Englishman living at that period who left a number of adult children in a place where records were preserved.⁶

Edward III died in 1377. If one's posterity equalled four generations per 100 years, its number would double every 25 years. One has two parents and four grandparents, etc. Proceeding back at this rate, if things followed a perfect mathematical formula, a person would have 1,048,576 direct grandparents in 500 years and 16,777,216 by 1366! Considering that England had a population of approximately 3,000,000 in the fourteenth century, it is obvious that our ancestry must have intermarried a great deal, and there is certainly a chance that one is descended from Edward III. However, among other things, the parish registers which Kluckhohn refers to *did not begin until 1538*, long after Edward III had left the scene.

8. There is a danger in becoming over-tooled. Stressing what is "genealogically correct" and what sources constitute "validity" can lead to a narrow interpretation of theory and can hinder scientific research. The finest tool in the world is of no value if no one can use it. Lack of proper instruction is the easiest way to misuse a tool, become disinterested in it, and leave it to lie and rust. A modern heraldist has summed up his own field with words which appropriately fit this category:

The twin dangers that beset any science, of course, are, first, its practitioners may become enamored of its rules than of its functions; and, secondly (compare the medical man's prescription), it may become a conspiracy against the layman. . . . When the rules . . . become so complex that they obscure meaning, and thus create ambiguity and inaccuracy, they have defeated the purpose for which they exist.⁷

9. A constant thorn to the professional genealogist is the great number of quacks who feed on the unwary. Humans tend to be dogmatic and want quick, authoritarian solutions; hence, quacks abound in any field where the true professional must cautiously work with inductive reasoning from a wide sampling and gathering of data. Imagination is needed in research. There are no cut-and-dried approaches to each problem, but general principles must be applied to reach sound conclusions.

The romantic must work within the bounds of scientific truisms, and though revelation has its place, it must be approached with caution in genealogy. The Lord has placed us in these physical surroundings, and He expects us to do all we can with what we have before we ask for outside assistance. In genealogy it is our duty to learn all we can about proper procedure.

Revelation or inspiration may guide us in using our knowledge more effectively and may give us a testimony of truth, but it will not supply us with answers which can be obtained from physical sources otherwise available to us. Orson Pratt tells us:

Can we run over the world and pick up Saints here and there and baptize them for their dead? No. The house of God is a house of order. . . . Every man will not be his own revelator in these matters, for there would be ten thousand revelators, and perhaps no more than five hundred of them would be true . . . they will not go to work in the dark, nor by the prophecies and revelations of every person who may offer himself as a revelator or prophet."⁸

10. Finally, *one of the biggest problems in genealogy is the aimless accumulation of data and the failure to formulate concrete plans of systematic action.* This has done more to cause confusion and subsequent indifference than any other single item. Endless name-gathering and recopying of other people's work can never be classed as research. These activities have led to vital errors, such as copying fictitious pedigrees from novels like Galsworthy's *Forsyte Saga* and proudly accepting the non-existent as distinguished forefathers. B. H. Roberts informs us that the mistakes committed at the inception of baptism for the dead, during the Nauvoo period, were to be

credited "to the overzeal and impatience of the church members."⁹ It may well be that this is still one of our biggest barriers toward scientific genealogical research.

The true researcher remains a student all his life and the preparation for his work is never finished. He must study and keep up with his own field and he must investigate others so that he might not become too narrow in his thinking. It is better to have a good understanding of general principles than it is to load the mind with detailed technical data which might readily be found in reference books or in a card catalog. It is not as important to learn the call number of a book or film as it is to know how that call number might be found in a card catalog, or how the book might assist in research. Learn to think, and through your actions you will solve many problems which have heretofore been classed as insoluble.

Terminology. In June of 1964, the Training Division of the LDS Genealogical Society held a series of classes to better train employees of the Society. During those lectures the following material was presented with respect to the meaning of genealogical research:

Genealogical research procedure involves the methods by which genealogical source material is utilized to establish the true genealogical identity of any given family unit or series of family units.

Full genealogical identity pertains to adequate identification of individuals, family units, and lineages so that each is separate and distinct from all others and cannot be misconstrued with any other person or family. The keys of identification of the individual are *names, dates, and places*; and the key of identification of the family and/or lineage is *kinship*.

The genealogical structure consists of acceptable data gleaned from genealogical source material identifying the individual, cemented together by reliable sources providing evidence of kinship. The names, dates, and places are the bricks of the structure, while the proof of kinship is the cement and mortar uniting the bricks in structural strength.

In an *analysis of sources*, each genealogical source should be identified by *period of time* in which it was developed and has been extant. The history or background of a genealogical source should provide significant information on the effectiveness with which the record

can be used and the relative extent to which it may become applicable to the specific problem. *A knowledge of the actual content of the record* is essential to determine the extent of its usefulness in genealogical research. The *availability of the record*—whether it is accomplished by personal visit, correspondence, or special arrangement—determines when and how it will be used in the research requirements. The efficient use of the record is dependent upon the manner or system involved in locating specific information in it without needlessly spending time in scanning unwanted material.

The procedural pattern becomes an established correlation of genealogical record sources by which true kinship can be determined between individuals who are otherwise properly identified. After a *knowledge of genealogical sources* has been acquired, the next step is to *develop correlation procedures*. The interrelation with other genealogical sources must be determined. This requires matching of data common to both records. The matching data must be sufficient in quantity to insure the same individual is involved. If matching is possible, then additional data must be included in the record to make it usable for genealogical extensions, but it may serve for documentation or verification purposes even if additional data does not exist. If matching data does not give evidence conclusively pertaining to the same individual, it may still be useful in directing attention to sources that may establish full identity and kinship requirements. The ability to recognize the limitations involved in any interlocking of interrelated records is most essential.

When data has been obtained on a given individual, it then becomes necessary to *evaluate this data and to establish its relative worth* in the genealogical identity, either for acceptability on its own worth or its relative value in relation to other conflicting or supporting data. *Data is categorized* into primary and secondary evidence, with *primary evidence* providing information not normally challengeable because it was established near enough to the time of the event, by an eye or ear witness to the event, that the fickleness of memory has not deteriorated the accuracy of the testimony. *Secondary evidence* is always challengeable by primary evidence and exists in a wide range of degrees of reliability. The originality of data is destroyed by transcription and would therefore become secondary even though initially primary. *The reliability of the informant* is an important factor in the evaluation of data.¹⁰

The following scientific terms were drawn from Webster's Unabridged Dictionary.¹¹ They are of special value to the genealogist.

Phenomena: An observable fact or event;

- An object or aspect known through the senses rather than by thought or intuition;
- A fact or event of scientific interest susceptible of scientific description and explanation.
- Fact: A piece of information presented as having objective reality;
Phenomenon reduced to identifiable terms;
Something that has actual existence;
An actual occurrence or event;
Phenomenon becomes fact when proven or verified.
- Proof: The cogency of evidence that compels acceptance by the mind of a truth or a fact.
- Knowledge: Information gained and preserved;
Learning or the perception of a thing or fact;
Clear perception of a truth, fact, or subject.
- Science: Facts organized to show relationships;
Knowledge acquired by study;
Knowledge which has been tested and set in order;
Systematized knowledge of any one department of the study of mind or matter, such as the science of physics.
- Research: Deep study or investigation;
Quest for new information through examination of source materials;
Inquiry directed to the discovery of truth;
Investigations of every kind which have been based upon original sources of knowledge.
(One who engages in research with the idea of immediate and certain use is said to be engaged in *applied research*.)

(One who engages in research because of interest in the activity or curiosity as to the results is said to be engaged in *pure research*.)

Induction: The process of establishing a general truth or law by observation of, experimenting with, or reasoning from particular instances.

Deduction: The process of drawing a particular fact or conclusion from a general law or principle.

(Research employs the *inductive* method. Only incidentally does it employ deduction.)

Research Methods and Procedures. In defining methods and procedures, it is necessary to determine the why, what, where, how and when of genealogy. The "why" has already been examined in the first two chapters. The "what" concerns itself with the four keys of identity i.e., names, dates, places and kinship. Each of these is a study within itself and singly they may also be helpful genealogical research guides. The "where" of genealogy is determined through an understanding of jurisdictions and sources for particular regions of the world. It is necessary to know which records are extant for a particular jurisdiction (town, county, or state, etc.) and to know what time period is represented in the sources extant.

The main jurisdictions of interest to the genealogist are those having to do with (1) social-commercial life, (2) ecclesiastical life and (3) civil life. The home, school, employer etc., are examples of social-commercial jurisdictions while the parish, ward, mosque, or shrine etc., represent important ecclesiastical jurisdictions. The town, city, county, state, province, etc., are those making up the civil jurisdiction. These are the places where records were created and where genealogical information came about. Some of the more important records and sources of importance to

the genealogist are vital, church, cemetery, census, probate, land, court, emigration, military, etc. The "how" and "when" is deciding which records to search in which jurisdictions and what period of time.

Sound research procedure would indicate the genealogist should first gain basic information from which he can proceed in research. This could be obtained from personal knowledge and from the testimony of others. Family and home sources serve as the starting place to gain such information. The researcher should next try to determine the extent of previous research and temple work so that he might not duplicate research effort that has already been expended. Special LDS sources—including the Temple Records Index Bureau and Church Records Archives—as well as printed secondary sources are the main sources to determine the extent of previous research. In the printed secondary source area we think primarily of biographical works, genealogies and genealogical indexes, pedigrees, histories and periodical works.

Family and home sources, special LDS sources, and printed secondary sources as listed above constitute the survey phase of research, for it is in this phase that we gain basic information and determine the extent of previous research. The survey is the real basis for successful searching and should always be performed before starting advanced research. Never hesitate to repeat a search, especially your own, but be careful to know when you are repeating a search and know why you are repeating it. Most of us fail to see the importance in the survey and tend to assume that adequate work has already been accomplished in the areas of the family and the home and in special LDS collections. The need for good survey work cannot be overemphasized. Everyone will agree that one should not spend all his time in the survey, for he wants to find new facts and data; but few realize the genealogical solutions that lie within the survey phase of research. Even though the family and home sources constitute the beginning in research, one should not hold up the rest of the survey to try to complete all possible searches in family and home sources. These searches may

go on indefinitely and one should not spend all his time there but should move to other sources after a reasonable time. Special LDS sources should be searched regardless of one's connection or association with the LDS Church. The sources enumerated under this caption are so general and cover such a broad time period and area that everyone should be interested in them.

The survey then, lays the foundation for research and sets up the proper search dimensions. It "ropes off the construction area" and provides such information as will lead to the original records and sources which should be searched. It may become necessary to repeat certain parts of the survey phase because the survey sources are living and growing collections. The survey not only forms the backbone of what has been done but it is the springboard to future research.

¹Morris R. Choen, "Philosophy and Scientific Methods," *Ten Lectures and Discussions on Science* (Graduate School, U.S.D.A., 1939), p. 83.

²Donald L. Jacobus, "Is Genealogy an Exact Science?" *The American Genealogist*, X (October, 1933), 65-70.

³Robert M. Hutchins, *The Great Conversation*, (Chicago: Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1952), 36-37.

⁴John E. Smith, "Philosophy and Religion," *The Great Ideas Today*, ed. Robert M. Hutchins (1965), p. 227.

⁵Clyde Kluckhohn, *Mirror For Man* (New York: Fawcett World Library, 1963), p. 104.

⁶*Ibid.*, p. 103.

⁷J. A. Reynolds, *Heraldry and You* (New York: Thomas Nelson and Sons, 1961), p. 59.

⁸N. B. Lundwall (comp.), *Masterful Discourses and Writings of Orson Pratt* (Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft Inc., 1962), pp. 278-281.

⁹B. H. Roberts, *A Comprehensive History of the Church* (Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret News Press, 1930), p. 76.

¹⁰Derek Harland, et al., "Genealogical Training Circular" (Salt Lake City, Utah, unpublished, 1964).

¹¹*Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language*, unabridged (Springfield, Mass.: Merriam, 1961).

Chapter 3

GENEALOGICAL IDENTIFICATION

In examining the four keys of identity it is vital to know something of the origin of names and dates as well as the significance of names, dates and places as tools in research. With respect to kinship, one needs to understand the individual's responsibility and privilege in research and he should know how to calculate and record relationship information. Each of the four keys of identity will be discussed separately.

There is no "one" way to record names, dates, places, etc., on the various forms in popular use. The LDS Genealogical Society has initiated a system for completing family group records processed through its facilities, and all members of the Church should follow those rules and standards for efficient processing, but in research one need not be held to rigid recording standards. The Genealogical Society has published the *Genealogical Instruction Manual*¹ which should be used by those who submit information through its facilities. However, it is a reference tool and not a research tool, and this should be clearly understood. Members of the Church should certainly familiarize themselves with the manual and adhere to the standards contained therein, but they should not teach that those standards are absolutely necessary to competent research. It is far more important for the genealogist to learn how to obtain and evaluate genealogical information correctly than it is to learn how to record that information on a particular form. There is a difference between a clerk and a genealogist.

The Name. The history and origin of personal names is an interesting study within itself. Man has always been given to vivid symbolism and nowhere has that been more obvious

than in the colorful names he selects for his offspring. Historically there was only need for one name. There were some exceptions to this, including the complete reference to clan and family in the complicated Roman naming system and in the nomenclature of the Hebrew culture.

In the main, western Europe was content with one name per individual until the expanding population forced them to utilize two names for better identification. This became a trend throughout Europe in the thirteenth century, but did not become firmly entrenched until the fifteenth century. Accordingly, *the first name* became referred to as *the given or christened name*, with reference to its bestowal at the time of the infant's baptism. *The second name* was called *the surname*, "sur" being a prefix meaning "over" or "in addition to." It is often mistakenly written "surname" with the idea its derivation was from the sire, but this was not necessarily the case. It was, as its origin implies, an additional name borne for identification purposes. It was not necessarily taken from the name of the male parent nor was it hereditary in the medieval period. In the late eighteenth century man began to add middle names for better identification purposes and some have speculated that a fourth name or a number will be necessary by the year 2000.

The medieval church reinforced the common name situation by stressing the use of biblical and classical given names. Even today most of our given names fit this situation, with perhaps a sprinkling of old Germanic names and some modern creations. Many have been highly amused with the colorful names used by American Indian tribes, but their system is basically no different from those used by most other cultures.

Many cultures have followed the custom of bestowing names to suit the personality of the child or characteristics which they hoped the child would achieve. When translated into modern English, some of these names appear ridiculous, since their original meaning has long since been lost. Thus, such old Germanic expressions as "helmet" (William), "hard ruler" (Richard), "bright fame" (Robert), "elf counsel" (Alfred), and "rich guardian" (Edward); or the Greek

"crown" (Stephen), "horse lover" (Philip), "god's gift" (Theodore); or the Latin "farmer" (George), "stone" (Peter), or "nobleman" (Patrick) have lost their real meaning though still perpetuated among us.

The Hebrews attached even greater significance to their names and often attempted to combine one of the names or titles of deity with them. The earliest Hebrew word for God was "El" while its plural form was "Elohim" meaning "Gods" or "God of all Gods." Jehovah or Lord was also a term commonly used, though to Latter-day Saints Jehovah and Elohim are two different individuals. Combinations of these names or titles, coupled with Hebrew names, resulted in some interesting descriptions.

"El" and "Eli" or "Jah," "Jo," and "Jeho" were often used as prefixes, while "el," "eel," "iel" or "iah," "jah" and "ia" were used as suffixes. Some of the resulting possibilities can be seen with the verb phrase "he has given" (Nathan). This could be formed into "El-nathan," "Nathan-iel," "Jo-nathan," or "Nathan-iah" which all refer to the phrase "God has given." Similarly, "judge" (Dan) becomes "God is a judge" in "Dan-iel" while "Sam-uel" suggests "name of God" as "Sam" means "name." In a like manner countless variations can be realized from the various suffix and prefix combinations.²

Some of these names were divinely inspired or changed to fit an individual's mission. "Exalted father" (Abram) is changed to "exalted father of a multitude" (Abraham). Rachel's "son of sorrow" (Ben-oni) becomes "son of the right hand" (Benjamin) in fitting retribution to Leah's boastful, "see a son" (Reu-ben). Of course the classic example remains the Hebrew name Joshua, roughly translated "the Jehova who brings salvation" which Mary was commanded to name her son. Today the world refers to Him as Jesus—the Greek translation of His Hebrew name. The following English birth certificate illustrates an unusual combination of names using every letter of the alphabet:

CERTIFIED COPY OF AN ENTRY OF BIRTH

The amount for this certificate is 5s. 6d.
where a search is necessary to find the entry,
a search fee is payable in addition.



GIVEN AT THE GENERAL REGISTER OFFICE,
SOMERSET HOUSE, LONDON.

Application Number Pa9 512161F

REGISTRATION DISTRICT <u>West Dorset</u>										
1883. BIRTH in the Sub-district of <u>West Dorset Rural</u> in the County of <u>Dorchester</u>										
Column —	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
No.	When and where born	Name, if any	Sex	Name and surname of father	Name, surname, and maiden surname of mother	Occupation of father	Signature, description, and residence of informant	When registered	Signature of registrar	
153	nineteenth December 1882 2014a West Dorset Road u.s.d.	Gunn Beathan Cecilia Diana Emily Young Gustavus Yarker Jno John West James William John Benjamin William Thomas William Thomas William Thomas William Thomas William Thomas	Girl	Arthur Pepper	Sarah Jane Pepper formerly Crighton	Laundry man	Arthur Pepper Yarker 2014 West Dorset Road West Dorset	Eight January 1883	J. Bunter Registrar	—

CERTIFIED to be a true copy of an entry in the certified copy of a Register of Births in the District above mentioned.

Given at the GENERAL REGISTER OFFICE, SOMERSET HOUSE, LONDON, under the Seal of the said Office, the 16th day of January 1961.

See note overleaf.



This certificate is issued in pursuance of the Births and Deaths Registration Act, 1953 (1 & 2 Edw. 2 c. 28).
Series 34 provides that any certified copy of an entry purporting to be such or stamped with the seal of the General Register Office shall be received in evidence of the birth or death to which it relates in any court without any further or other proof of the entry, and no certified copy purporting to be given in the said office shall be of any force or effect unless it is so stamped or sealed.
CAUTION.—Any person who (1) falsifies any of the particulars on this certificate, or (2) uses a falsified certificate as true, knowing it to be false, is liable to prosecution.

BC 201002

English Birth Certificate

Middle names are a modern innovation using either another given name or a surname. As late as the mid-19th century it is uncommon to find the majority of the population using middle names. When such names are used they can often be helpful tools in providing clues to family names. The middle name may well be the maiden name of the mother or from some other family line. In some instances it might hold the key to the father of an illegitimate child. This assumption must be handled carefully, however, as it may also be the name of any maternal ancestral line; a godparent, friend or another non-related possibility.

Surname origins³ throughout Europe generally fall into four groups, i.e., (1) place or locality, (2) relationships or patronymics, (3) occupation or status, and (4) special characteristics. Place names might have come from the community, region or country of origin; the points of the compass; or natural and man-made features. These names were usually introduced by prepositions such as *at*, *by* and *of*, including the French and Spanish "*de*," the Dutch "*van*," the German "*von*," the Polish "*ski*," etc.; or they may have been a combination of a preposition and article such as "*del*, *de la*, or *vander*." By 1400 most of these had dropped from the English or had resulted in permanent combinations such as "*Attwood*" and "*Bywater*." Continental Europe favored their continued use and sometimes emphasized their reservation for nobility; especially the French "*de*" and the German "*von*." This claim is not a reliable guide to the status of one's ancestry however. Such names as *Debenham* (a village in Suffolk, England), *North*, *West*, *Hill*, *Brooks*, *Forest*, *Grove*, *Glade*, *Ford*, *Bridge*, *de Elizondo* and *Cor-doba* (Spanish towns), *de Gaulle* (ancient name for southern France) illustrate names which had their origin in a place or locality.

Names resulting from a patronym or relationship were evident in many countries of the world. In this situation, the child took the given name of the father as a surname. It was a widespread practice in Europe at an early date and was common in Scandinavian countries until the late 1800's. The son of *Peter*, *George*, or *John* might become *Pedersen*,

Jorgensen, and Jensen in Denmark and Sweden whereas the Norwegian preferred the "son" ending. The English Johnson or Thompson is common as is the Irish "O" apostrophe for "of", the Norman "Fitz" for "son," and the Gaelic "Mac." The Scots preferred the Gaelic prefix and the Welsh used their term for son "Mab" or the plural. "Mab" became "ab" or the phonetically softer "ap" in conjunction with the given name; thus "John ab Even" (John son of Even) became "John Bevan." Other interesting combinations of Welsh interest included "son of Hugh" (Pugh or Hughes); "son of Richard (Prichard or Prichart) etc.

The Polish ending "ski" could indicate "of a place" or "patronymic" origin. The Germans used the plural or even a diminutive so that "son of Walter" might become the surname "Welti." "Vich" is the Russian form usually reserved for affectionate nicknames, but might have been passed on as a surname as is seen in "Petrovich" (Peterson). The Dutch used "sen" or "zoon" or just the "s" or "z" ending to produce Jansen, Janszoon, Hendricks or Hendriksen. In Belgium it would be typical to change the ending to an "x" so that Hendricks became "Hendrix." The Spanish ending "z," "ez" or "az" is also patronymic so that "son of Diego" (James) becomes "Diaz"; Fernando-Fernandez; Gonzalo-Gonzalez, etc.

English patronyms are not always recognizable because of the use of diminutives, including double and triple combinations. The standard affectionate form of address was to shorten the name to the first syllable. Our medieval ancestors then produced a rhyme with it and/or a double diminutive by adding the suffixes "ot," "et," "un," "in," "el," "cock" or "kin," and triple diminutives with combinations of "el-in," "el-ot," "in-ot," "et-in." Surnames such as Hitchcock, Higgins, Dickens, and Digg are actually forms of Richard; while Robins, Dobbins, Hobbes, Hopkins, Nabb, and Dobbes are forms of Robert; and Wilkins, Wilkinson, and Willmott are forms of William.

Names with their origin in an occupation are common and will be recognized in Smith, Taylor, Carpenter, Baker, Weaver or Webster, Brewer or Brewster, and in the German

Zimmerman and Schmidt for Carpenter and Smith, the French Barbier (Barber), Boulanger (Baker), Chevalier (Shoveler), and in the Spanish Herrera (Smith) and Corredor (Broker). Many of these names pertain to occupations foreign to modern times. Who would recognize Pindar, Bailiff, Woodward and Hayward as positions of the English feudal manor, or who would realize that the medieval shoemaker was a chaucer and a barrel maker a cooper?

Names originating from certain characteristics or those descriptive in nature may even be more difficult to recognize in this modern time. They may have been comparisons of persons with plants and animals or descriptions of physical and even mental attributes. Often they were a crude joke in reverse, such as the modern tendency to call a bald man "curly." One can well imagine what the medieval ancestor was really like who was portrayed with such a name as "Doolittle," "Armstrong," "Moody," "Sharp," "Careless," "Lamb," "Stork," "Thrush," etc.⁴

Names in and of themselves can be helpful clues in research, but their value in this respect is somewhat limited. One must keep in mind that there were no real spelling rules until the nineteenth century. Names can be spelled correctly in many different, but familiar, phonetic ways. One should not pounce upon an earlier variation as the correct spelling or pass up a form which deviates slightly; nor wonder if he can find legal documents showing when the name changed to its present form. The name can often be found spelled several different ways in the same document even when the author was the individual concerned. This was not a result of illiteracy, but rather, is an indication of the development of the written language.

Europeans did not become thoroughly name and record-conscious until the Council of Trent (1545-64). Surnames settled into more permanent patterns at that time. Custom also helped cement the modern usage, but earlier there had been frequent name changes. In addition to this, foreigners migrating into a new area might translate their names or render them into rough phonetic variations. Many names may only appear to fit the patterns described

earlier and are often transliterations from another tongue. These factors rule out the possibility of relationship to every person bearing the same name, and in conjunction with the lack of records indicate why one is fortunate to trace a line earlier than the 1500's.

Nevertheless, names may provide solutions to a genealogical problem and should be studied by the researcher. The name might indicate a certain religious affiliation or represent an historical event. It might refer to a geographical place or a national migration which allows one to pinpoint an ancestor at a given place in a certain time period. In countries where patronymics were practiced for several generations, the given name of the father is automatically revealed with each new find, though this is not too helpful because so few given names were used. The Spanish nomenclature tends to favor compound surnames which frequently add the mother's maiden name to that of the child's paternal surname. This is particularly true of the last two centuries. Among certain New England peoples it was not uncommon to find that the first two boys were named for their grandfathers and the first two girls after their grandmothers. When such a system was known to be used the value to the genealogist is obvious.⁵

Unusual given names or certain specific given names may be repeated in a certain family line over several generations and this may also help in determining a genealogical connection. However, one must be careful in such assumptions, for the names are often common to many different families. The same holds true for the terms junior and senior or elder and younger. It is not uncommon to find that a boy may be called "junior" because he was named after an uncle, a godfather, or a friend and not after his own father. In a like manner, one could conclude that the term "senior" is often a term applied many years after birth; for he didn't become a "senior" until after he had a "junior." Other peculiarities and customs will be determined and recognized as the genealogist studies the area and time period of interest.

The Period of Time. Just as these surnames of ours have gone through considerable change, so has the calendar which we use and this has significance for the genealogist. From the earliest times man has experimented with and used different methods to identify time. Most of the early calendars were based on the phases of the moon, which produced the so-called lunar calendar. This lunar calendar consisted of a 12-month year of $29\frac{1}{2}$ days each. There have been calendars in use with less than 12 months and some with as many as 18 months in the year. Possibly the most lucid portrayal of the calendar and its effect on the genealogist was one written by Donald Lines Jacobus entitled *Dates and the Calendar*⁶ which is reproduced below with the author's permission.

Names, dates and places are the working material of the genealogist, and for ease and accuracy in handling dates the genealogist should possess or develop a mathematical mind. He should see at a glance that a man born in 1738 was too young to marry in 1751; and that he probably did not marry a woman born in 1724. Experience teaches him to weigh problems of date and to draw conclusions from them almost instantaneously.

When very few positive dates are available, and the genealogist desires to check the probability of an alleged pedigree or a series of relationships, it is helpful to assign "guessed" dates of births. If the children of given parents are known, but not their birth dates, these can be guessed from known dates. If the age at death of one of the children is found stated, then for this one we have an approximate date of birth, probably not more than a year away from fact in either direction. We thus can work from the known towards the unknown, and group the other children about the one with the fixed date. The marriage dates of some of the children may be known, and birth dates may be guessed from these, on the basis that a boy married at from 22 to 26, and a girl at from 18 to 24. When one of the girls had recorded children born from 1721 to 1745, for example, then at a glance we can set down 1700-1701 almost with certainty as the approximate time of her birth, because here we have the known limits of the period of child-bearing to guide us.

Such "guessed" dates should be clearly marked in some way to avoid confusion with positive dates that have record authority. They can be placed in brackets, thus: [say 1701]. Or the date can be preceded by the word "circa," Latin meaning "about," or its abbreviation, "c."

When we have arrived at such approximate dates for the births of all the children, the advantage is the picture it gives us of the family as a whole. Perhaps our problem is the parentage of one Charles Evans, and we suspect that he belonged in the family group whose approximate ages we have been working out. We know, let us say, from his age at death, that he was born about 1681. Let us suppose that the births of this group of children we worked out can be placed with extreme probability between 1698 and 1715. It then appears that our Charles, born about 1685, was more probably of the previous generation, possibly an uncle of the children whose ages we guessed.

For many reasons it is advantageous in doing genealogical research to consider *the family group*, not to look upon each ancestor as an isolated individual, or as a mere link in a chain of descent. One of the most important reasons is, that it enables us to check the chronology. Very often, the relations of dates determine or *negate* the possibility of an alleged line of descent, or provide clues which might otherwise elude detection. It is a good idea to write out the full family history, or chart the relationships, while working, inclusive of "guessed" dates where positive dates are not known. It is a great aid to the memory as well as to the imagination, if the eye can see the members of the family grouped together.

There is one technical matter that affects dates and needs to be studied in some detail if the genealogist is to understand and properly interpret the Old Style dates; this is the important calendar change of 1752. As few things are more confusing to the inexperienced searcher, a complete explanation of it will be given.

The Julian calendar was used throughout the Middle Ages in Europe. Its inaccuracy amounted to about three days in every four centuries. By the time the Gregorian Calendar named after Pope Gregory XIII) was adopted in 1582, calendar dates were ahead of actual time by ten days. Since actual time is the time it takes the earth for one complete revolution about the sun (a year), if the calendar had been left uncorrected, in the course of centuries the present summer months would have come in the winter, and vice versa.

Although the Roman Catholic countries adopted the Gregorian calendar in 1582, the conservatism of the English, and the fact that the new calendar was sponsored by a *Pope*, delayed the acceptance of it in Great Britain and her colonies until after the passage of an Act of Parliament in 1751. By this time, the old calendar was eleven days ahead of sun time, so the Act provided that in 1752, the second day of September should be followed by the fourteenth day of September. In other words, what would have been September 3rd was called the 14th, exactly eleven days being thus dropped out of the year.

The cause of the error was the addition of a day to the calendar each fourth year (Leap Year). This very nearly made the average year correspond with sun time, but not quite. In every 400 years, as above stated, the calendar went three days ahead of sun time. The dropping of the eleven days in 1752 brought the calendar back into harmony with sun time; and to provide against a recurrence of the trouble, it was also provided that on the even centuries, no Leap Year day should be added except in a century divisible by 400. Thus 1800 and 1900 were not Leap Years, but the year 2000 will be. In this way, in the 400 years beginning with 1752, there will be three days less than there were in each 400 years preceding 1752, hence the old error will not be repeated.

So little did the people understand the need for the calendar revision, that an angry mob gathered outside the Houses of Parliament, demanding that the eleven days filched out of their lives be restored to them. Actually, calling the third day of September the fourteenth day did not deprive any person of eleven days of his life, any more than changing a man's name from Bill to Tom would make him a different person. The real effect was to make every person born on or before 2 Sept. 1752 eleven days older (by the new calendar) than the record of his birth (in Old Style) would indicate. A child born on 2 Sept. 1752 (the last day of the Old Style) would be, by the calendar, twelve days old on the following day, 14 Sept. 1752 (the first day of the New Style).

People do not like to be considered older than they really are, not even eleven days older. It was natural that those living in 1752 should "rectify" their birth dates. George Washington was born 11 Feb. 1731/2. In 1752 the calendar change automatically made him eleven days older, so like most men of his generation, he rectified his birth date, making it 22 Feb. 1732. The latter is the date on which he *would have been born if* the New Style Calendar had been in effect in 1732—which it was not.

Although it was (and is) incorrect to change the dates prior to September 1752 into New Style, it was done to such an extent by those living in 1752 that the genealogist has to make allowance for it. Suppose, for example, that a group of brothers and sisters were born before the calendar change, and in the town records the Old Style dates were therefore used in entering their births. The first child was born, let us say, 25 May 1743. Now, after all the children had been born, the parents bought a Bible, say about 1765, and entered in it their own marriage and the births of the children, giving *New Style* dates for *all* the children, including those born before 1752 whose birth-days should properly have been entered Old Style. As a result, we find that the eldest child (whose birth in the contemporary town records had been entered as 25 May 1743) was entered in the Bible as born 5 June 1743. Both dates are cor-

rect, but the former is the date that *ought* to be used, unless the latter has the words "New Style" added to indicate that it is a "rectified" date.

A further effect of this change must be mentioned. When a man died after 1752, assuming that he was born before Sept. 1752, and his age at death was stated exactly in years, months and days, the resultant date of birth (figured from the age at death) is the New Style date of birth, and therefore eleven days later than the recorded Old Style date of birth.

For example, Ephraim Burr, by his gravestone, died 29 Apr. 1776 aged 76 years and 13 days. Subtracting the age gives us 16 Apr. 1700 for his birth, but of course to get the Old Style date then in use we must subtract eleven days more. His birth was not recorded, but he was *baptized* 14 Apr. 1700, two days before his New Style date of birth. After subtracting the eleven days, we find that his real date of birth, in accordance with the Old Style calendar then in use, was 5 Apr. 1700, which was nine days *before* he was baptized. Obviously he could not have been born two days *after* baptism, which is the result we get if we fail to make allowance for the calendar change.

It is very necessary that the genealogist, professional or amateur, should thoroughly understand this calendar change, or he will miss proofs of identity furnished by the comparison of birth records with stated ages at death.

When a child was born before 1752 and the birth was recorded contemporaneously, add eleven days to the date to obtain the New Style equivalent.

When a person born prior to Sept. 1752 died after that date and the death record states the *exact* age, subtract the age from the date of death, and then subtract eleven days more to obtain the Old Style equivalent.

Exact ages were not always stated, and unless the *days* are specified, the presumption is that the age is not exact. When the record states that a man died aged fifty years and eight months, he may have been that age to a day, but he may have been a few days over the fifty years and eight months. Recorders did not always bother to specify the age to a day, nor did those who had gravestones erected always so specify.

In order to make quite clear the effect of the calendar change, to those who have difficulty in grasping it, the following was the order of days in 1752 beginning with August 30.

30 August

31 August

1 September
2 September
14 September
15 September

One other change was made in 1752, and that was the date of beginning the New Year. It is understood by everyone that between one spring and the next a year has elapsed, similarly between one autumn and the next. But when we assign numbers to the years for convenience in referring to them, it is necessary to begin the new year on a particular day. The succession of seasons and years is entirely natural, caused by the orbit of the earth about the sun. But selecting one certain day on which to start a new year is an artificial and an arbitrary thing. Consequently, various peoples in various ages have celebrated different New Year's Days. Some of the ancient races ended their year with a Harvest Festival, and the Jews still retain that season. Others began the year with the Vernal Equinox, and since Easter fell near that season, the date quite generally used for the religious New Year's Day by Christians was 25 March. There was no uniformity in the early centuries, and some began the year on 25 December, the traditional birthday of Christ.

The only dates for New Year's Day which were in use in American colonial days among the English settlers were 25 March and 1 January. The latter was the beginning of the legal year, while the former, as we have seen, had more religious significance. The Act of Parliament in 1751 established 1 January as New Year's Day for 1752 and subsequent years. Thereafter, we are not bothered by the confusion that existed when the year had two possible beginnings.

Now this change did not, like the dropping of eleven days, have any effect on the ages of persons then living. This will be seen if we suppose that it should be decided hereafter to celebrate the Fourth of July on Armistice Day. A person born 4 May would still be born on 4 May; and when New Year's Day was shifted from 25 March to 1 January, it did not affect the birthday of a man born on 4 May. His birthday was still 4 May, Old Style, or 15 May, New Style.

Some have misunderstood the effects of the change in New Year's Day, and have supposed that it caused a difference of nearly three months in people's ages.⁸ When the names of the months of birth were entered, such a notion is unthinkable. Before 1700, the early recorders sometimes used the *number* of the month instead of its *name*. This was the practice of the Quakers, and occasionally survived until a later period. Of course, March was then numbered as the first month, since New Year's Day fell in it, and dates before the 25th were considered as belonging to the first month, as well as

dates after the 25th. April was the second month, and May the third. The early Quaker records were often very precise, stating that an event occurred "on the 10th of the 5th month which is called July."

When the *number* of the month was stated in any record prior to 1752, the genealogist should reckon March as the first month, and February as the twelfth.

If a record states that John Jones was born on the 10th of the fifth month, 1710, this must be Old Style, and means that he was born in July. After 1752, July became the seventh instead of the fifth month, but this does not affect the fact that John Jones was born in July.

Before 1752, there is likely to be some confusion with regard to dates between 1 January and 24 March, unless we know what New Year's Day a particular recorder used. It is apparent that if the year began 25 March, a man born on 20 February was born before the new year began, hence a year earlier than it would be by New Style. If 1710 began on 25 March, then a man born on 20 February following was born in 1710, since 1711 did not begin until the next month. Dates between 1 January and 24 March fell in the preceding year if Old Style was used; but if New Style was used, this threw all dates after 1 January into the new year.

The only problem in this connection is the *year* in which a man was born, and we always run the chance of an error of *exactly a year* if we do not know which calendar the recorder used. Back of 1700, we can usually assume that the year began on 25 March, and this is true of most church registers until 1752. But after 1700, the use of 1 January was gradually coming into favor, especially in legal documents and town records.

Careful recorders used a double date, and when this was done all confusion or uncertainty is eliminated. George Washington was born 11 Feb. 1731/2, which means that the year was still 1731 if the New Year was reckoned as not beginning until 25 March, but that the year was already 1732 if it had begun 1 January. That is, it was 1731 Old Style, or 1732 New Style. Genealogists should always copy the double date when it is given in the records, for the single date is an uncertain one. The date 11 Feb. 1731, Old Style, is identical with 22 Feb. 1732, New Style.

Sometimes records in Old Style look peculiar to us. In Norwich, Conn., vital records, we read that Robert Wade married 11 Mar. 1691, and the eldest child was born Jan. 1691. We may assume that the marriage occurred 11 Mar. 1690/1, this recorder happening to use the later year date here because he was thinking of March as the first month of the new year; the child was born Jan. 1691/2, ten months later. It was still 1691, Old Style.

Remember that this confusion, before 1752, of year dates, applies only to dates between 1 January and 24 March, since all other dates belong to the same year regardless of when New Year's Day was celebrated.

The following steps may be applied to determine easily when to use the double dates as explained by Mr. Jacobus above:

1. Observe the date of each year carefully. Does it fall before the country of interest accepted the use of "1 January" as the first of the year? (1752 in Great Britain and North America.) If the answer is yes, go on to step number 2. If the answer is no, leave the date as it is.
2. Does the date fall between 1 January and 24 March? If yes, see number 3 and if no, leave the date as it is.
3. Double-date by adding a slash mark after the last numeral in the year and then list the last digit of the next year. (Example: 1 January 1734 becomes 1 January 1734/5.)

The genealogist may be troubled by dates written in numerals. The European system recorded such information in the order of day, month, and year. It must be remembered that Ladyday (25th of March) was the first of the year but the entire month of March was considered the first month, April the second, May the third, June the fourth, etc. (The Latin counterparts still remain for the seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth months in "September," "October," "November" and "December.") January and February were actually the eleventh and twelfth months under the Julian calendar. In the Gregorian calendar change they became the first and second months which made December the twelfth month rather than the tenth which its name implied. A date such as 5/7/1730 in England would actually be 5 September 1730 prior to the Gregorian calendar and not 5 July 1730 as in our present system. Even after the changeover in 1752, English ministers often used the abbreviations "7-ber," "8-ber," "9-ber," and "10-ber," for September, October, November, and December.

The genealogist also may find dates recorded in the equivalent of a feast day and regnal year. The medieval church dedicated each day of the year to a religious event. Certain of these are fixed days such as Christmas, Ladyday, etc., and meant that they would fall on a fixed day each year. Others were movable such as Easter, which is determined from the event of the first full moon after the spring equinox. This meant that Easter could fall anywhere from 22 March to 25 April inclusive. Many of the church's movable feast days depend on when Easter falls in a given year. A complete list of the fixed and movable dates with their numerical counterpart is to be found in Cheney's *Handbook of Dates of English History* (London: Royal Historical Society, 1955) pp. 43-64. The Instruction Manual of the Genealogical Society also gives a listing, with a guide for finding some of the most prominent movable feast dates between 1528 and 1851. Regnal years refer to dates from the start of a particular ruler's reign, and in order to decipher such a date one must know the yearly cycles of the monarch's rule. A complete listing of British rulers has been compiled by Cheney on pages 13-32; and the pontifical years are shown on pages 33-39.

Man has not been overly conscious of birthdates until recent times, and the genealogist should not be surprised to find a lack of exact vital statistics for his earlier ancestors. It may often be necessary to calculate a birthdate from a given event.

The Locality. A third important element of genealogical identity, and also an important factor in defining research objectives, is the locality or place. Not only is it essential to know the name of the individual, his date of birth, marriage and death, etc., but for complete identification it is necessary to know the places where such genealogical events and circumstances took place. Through *an understanding of the time and place*, the genealogist gains insight into the solution of his genealogical problems. History and geography form an important part of genealogical research, and the genealogist must study the localities and places of concern to his pedigree and utilize this knowledge in evaluating genealogical information.

The researcher should analyze his pedigree and make a study of each locality of concern. Places of birth, marriage, death, burial and residence are each of special interest, for these localities are the jurisdictions where the records and sources of genealogical value are to be found. With respect to migration and settlement, it is of utmost importance to study the history and geography of each locality. The immigrant ancestral home might be determined through a place name, and a knowledge of the topography of a region aids in understanding patterns of migration and settlement. Through the birthplace of a child a clue to the deathplace of a parent is gained, and through the "probate" locality it is often possible to gain information on places of residence of descendants and relatives.

Boundary changes and the evolution of place names must be determined by the genealogist not only within towns, counties, and states, but also concerning countries whose boundaries and jurisdictional control have varied over the years. Probate matters are primarily a problem of jurisdictional control and must be understood by the successful researcher.

Each region or country has its peculiarities. A town which once existed and which was a thriving metropolis may long since have become a ghost town or have no remaining vestige. A county may have been created only to be gobbled up by a neighboring county, or an entire province may have been incorporated or combined into another. Genealogical records and sources which may have existed in such localities may have been incorporated with the records and sources of the parent localities or they may have been deposited in special archives, libraries or societies. A knowledge of such possibilities is essential to successful research. In certain instances, records may have passed into the hands of private collectors or may even have been destroyed. A territory may have maintained certain records of special value to the genealogist, but such records may now be part of the records of the respective states which sprang from the territory, and study of the history and background of such actions is essential to competent research. In some instances, these evolutionary actions have

resulted in the deposit of records and sources in the most unexpected places, and only a careful study of the history and background of those localities will bring forth the desired information.

In *determining the correct designation of places*, the genealogist most generally consults a good atlas, map, gazetteer, postal guide or directory. Some jurisdictions have published guides and manuals giving specialized place-name information. When such are not obtainable and when one is unable to determine extinct place-names, it is wise to correspond with local libraries, historical societies, national libraries and even "old-timers" of the localities involved.

Local and regional histories are excellent tools to gain a knowledge of place-names and their history. Not only do these reveal locality facts of special value, but they often disclose information as to names, dates, and relationships of pertinent individuals. The researcher's particular ancestor of concern may not always be listed, but often his relatives and associates are included. It is just as valuable to learn genealogical facts about an uncle's mother as it is a grandfather's wife. The place of birth of a close associate may be the same as that of one's ancestor, and quite often it is possible that the religious affiliation of an associate is the same as that of a relative.

Old maps showing water courses and *land plats* and *surveys* are excellent finding tools. Good libraries have strong collections of such tools. The Library of Congress has an exhaustive map collection, and information from its holdings may be obtained at a reasonable cost. The LDS Genealogical Society in Salt Lake City, Utah, has an excellent collection of such finding tools and continues to obtain valuable works.

Card catalogs are intrinsically good finding tools for place-name information. *University libraries* are also exceptional in their historical and geographical coverage. Their reference sections often can answer difficult questions having to do with history and geography. The conscientious researcher will not give up on a place or locality name-problem until he has exhausted the above listed sources.

In searching *census records* of large metropolitan communities it is essential to narrow the search area by determining the civil district or its counterpart. *Local and city directories* or other special guides often contain information on wards, precincts, districts, or post offices. It is not uncommon to find the address, date of death, and spouse's given name from some of the more modern directories. In foreign countries where masses of people have resided over many years, it is necessary to determine designations of hamlets, villages, farms, and communes. Special guides are available in genealogical libraries and local or regional libraries for such information. One should keep in mind that word-of-mouth origins are not to be relied upon even when the immigrant ancestor reported them personally. Often the names of such places become garbled as they are passed down in family tradition, and it is also possible that the ancestor actually stated a near-by place that was better known or perhaps he gave a smaller subdivision rather than the exact locality name.

It can be seen that the genealogist must gain a good understanding of each locality pertinent to his pedigree and must study its history and background. Through this study he will be able to define research objectives and will be able to reach the genealogical records and sources so necessary in solving genealogical problems.

Finally, a study of place-names and localities also has cultural value. The student is better able to understand factors of cause and effect in human movement, of wars, religion and other social and economic factors. Through genealogical research, these things can live and be given a new meaning for the inquirer.

Kinship. Kinship is the most important key to genealogical identification. Two individuals could be born on the same date at the same place and could be given the same name, but they could not have the same parentage unless they were twins. The relationship which exists between individuals and families becomes an important consideration for the genealogist—he should be able to determine the correct

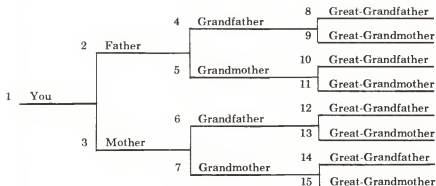
relationship and should be able to correctly calculate the degree of kinship between individuals.

In order to be related, two individuals must have a *common ancestor* at some point in their ancestry. The kinship or *degree of relationship* is dependent on the closeness in blood—not time—to that common ancestor. Full brothers and sisters have the same common progenitors and there exists a close degree of relationship between them. A fourth cousin is not nearly as closely related to you as a brother or sister because different progenitors are involved which are not common to each other. In order to determine the degree of relationship between individuals, it is necessary to identify their common progenitor(s).

In genealogical research, the only restrictions as to whose ancestry one might work upon are those involving moral considerations. Invasion of privacy is always a concern. In LDS doctrine one's responsibility is to see that saving ordinances are administered for himself and for his direct ancestors and to see that each is properly sealed. An area of privilege also exists for collateral relatives, or for brothers and sisters of one's ancestors and their descendants. The standards followed in LDS genealogy are based upon the degree of relationship established by canonical law, with some modification. The following terms and definitions are basic to that system:

- Direct Ancestor: Any person from whom someone descends; father, mother, grandfather, grandmother, etc.
- Collateral Relative: A brother or sister of a direct ancestor or their descendants; aunts, uncles, cousins, etc.

The following illustration indicates what a direct ancestor might be in relation to you:

*Outline Pedigree Chart*

As the pedigree extends beyond the great-grandparents, the generations are as follows:

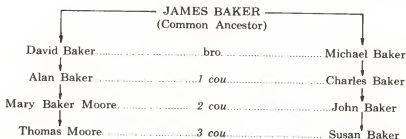
2nd great-grandparents (who are the parents of your great-grandparents),

3rd great-grandparents (who are the parents of your 2nd great-grandparents),

4th great-grandparents (who are the parents of your 3rd great-grandparents),

and so on. The system of numbering is obviously much easier than the repetition of many "greats." Actually, the figure indicates the number of "greats" that precede the "grandparent."

Brothers and sisters of direct ancestors are collateral relatives and include uncles and aunts. Descendants of these brothers and sisters are also collateral relatives and are known as "cousins" of varying degree. Children of aunts and uncles are first cousins; or putting it another way, children of brothers and sisters are first cousins to each other. Children of first cousins are second cousins to each other, etc. The following chart illustrates this.



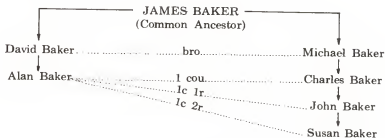
Relationship Chart Showing Common Ancestor

The children of brothers and sisters are *first cousins* to each other. The children of first cousins are *second cousins* to each other. The children of second cousins are *third cousins* to each other, etc.

When cousins are not of the same generation, i.e., when cousins are not descended equally in generations from a common ancestor, such as in the case of Alan Baker and John Baker in the preceding illustration, the degree of cousin relationship is determined by the number of generations the cousins are *removed* from each other.

Children of aunts and uncles are first cousins and children of grandaunts and granduncles are first cousins one time removed. Children of great grandaunts and great granduncles are first cousins two times removed.

The following chart is used by the LDS Church to show various degrees of relationship and is reproduced by permission:



Relationship Chart Showing Degree of Removal

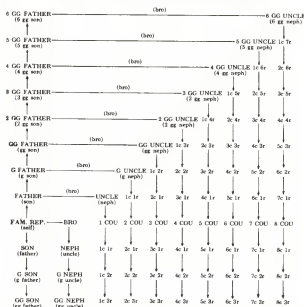
The calculation of kinship may seem somewhat confusing to the beginning researcher but this need not be

the case. The above charts and illustrations are designed to assist the researcher in determining his relationship to another person. In order to be related to someone, the individuals must trace their descent to a common ancestor. They are either children of a common ancestor or descended from a child of a common ancestor. It should be noted that a person may be related to another person in more than one way, i.e., persons may marry their own relatives and varying degrees of relationship might exist.

"In-law" and "step" relationships exist also, and the genealogist should be cognizant of these terms. The spouse (husband or wife) of a blood relative is a relative-in-law (unless the spouse is also a blood relative as mentioned above); hence the spouse of a first cousin is a first cousin-in-law. The wife of a son is a daughter-in-law and the husband of a daughter is a son-in-law etc. A direct ancestor might have married more than once and that spouse (or those spouses) who is not a direct ancestor is a "step" relative. Perhaps your father marries a person other than your mother. This person is your "step-mother." Your grandfather marries a person other than your grandmother and this person is your "step grandmother." Issue from such a union are related, but in "half degree." However, for purposes of genealogy and calculating relationship, "half relationships" are considered as if they were full. Of course such unions should be shown on separate family group records, for they are separate and distinct family groups.

As we engage in genealogical research and as we trace our ancestral lines to earlier periods, we become more and more aware of relationships to others which we had not realized. Of course we are all related if we trace our ancestry back far enough. It has been said that we can choose our friends but we have to take our relatives. The other side of the coin, of course, is that they also have to take us.

Abbreviations: g father — grandfather; gg father — great-grandfather, bro — brother; c — cousin; cou — cousin, neph — nephew, r — generations removed.



Note — This chart has been prepared using male relationships. The relationships apply in the same manner to females, merely by substituting the applicable word: daughter, mother, aunt, niece, or sister in the properly abbreviated form.

Relationship Chart showing Various Degrees of Kinship.

¹*Genealogical Instruction Manual* (Salt Lake City, Utah: The Genealogical Society of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, Inc., 1965).

²"Names," *Cambridge Biblical Encyclopedia* (1956), p. 109.

³See the Appendix for further information on the origin of surnames.

⁴The authors are indebted to P. H. Reaney for his *Dictionary of British Surnames* (London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1958) from which came much of the above discussion on surnames. The work is not complete nor infallible but is probably one of the best modern references on the subject.

⁵See the Appendix for an interesting article on *Early Nomenclature* by Donald Lines Jacobus which has special significance to the New England researcher.

⁶Donald L. Jacobus, "Dates and the Calendar," *The American Genealogist*, IX (January, 1933), pp. 130-140.

⁷The Greek Church did not approve the calendar revision, and consequently Greece, Bulgaria and Russia used the Old Style calendar until World War I, when they were thirteen days ahead of sun time.

⁸See, for example, the explanatory notes prefaced to the recent *Coolidge Genealogy*, for the expression of such a misunderstanding.

⁹*Genealogical Instruction Manual*, op. cit.

Chapter 4

GENEALOGICAL EVIDENCE

The competent genealogist should have a good knowledge and understanding of genealogical evidence to better gather, analyze, interpret and present his genealogical findings. An understanding of all the legal technicalities and implications of evidence may not be necessary, but a good researcher should be able to classify information as to its source and be able to evaluate it in relation to a particular genealogical problem.

An article recently appeared in *The American Genealogist* concerning the instructional materials which continue to come forth in genealogy regarding the evaluation of evidence. The author was somewhat disturbed, and rightly so, with the insistence of persons placing each record or fact into a particular compartment rather than *gaining the proper interpretation of the information*. He suggested that the best course of action and training is to go to the original record sources and “. . . dig, dig, dig, until one gets the ‘feel’ of the time and place. . .”¹

We concur one hundred per cent and would suggest that a recent surge of amateurs into the field of genealogy is partially responsible for these publishings. However, the problem of the evaluation of evidence in genealogy is not so much one of premeditated action as it is a lack of understanding which is the result of inadequate instructional materials.

As a field of study, genealogy has not yet accepted standards in the classification and evaluation of evidence. It has borrowed heavily from the legal field, but rules and standards to meet its own needs have not yet been formalized nor accepted.

Noel C. Stevenson, in his "Rules of Evidence,"² has certainly made a contribution to the field. His suggestion is that genealogical standards, with respect to evidence, should be no less than those in law. This would probably be satisfactory if some of the legal aspects of evidence which have no real application in genealogy are dropped.

Another definite contribution to the field is Derek Harland's *Genealogical Research Standards* (formerly *A Basic Course in Genealogy*, Vol. II).³ This work does much to bring terms and definitions as well as evaluation techniques before the genealogist. Much of the material contained therein was based on writings of Donald Lines Jacobus, Noel C. Stevenson, and the late Archibald F. Bennett, each of whom was a member of the Society of American Genealogists.

Other contributions to the field of genealogy of lesser importance have been made, and at the risk of adding to that group, the following paragraphs are given. It is hoped they will result in a better understanding of genealogical evidence and that they will provide the practicing genealogist with simplified rules and standards to follow. This work does not propose to be the ultimate in explanation nor evaluation, but it may well serve as a basis from which others might expand.

The Origin of Evidence. Webster states that "phenomena" is something known through the senses rather than by thought or intuition, and that fact is something having actual existence or being.⁴ In science these are sources of knowledge, and through their study science is expanded. Knowledge is explained as understanding, learning, or perception of a thing, and in this regard is the understanding of fact, which is simply phenomena identified.

Genealogical phenomena could be identified as an event or circumstance relating to a family or to descent. *Genealogical knowledge* could then be explained as the understanding one gains of genealogical facts pertaining to a family or to descent.

In genealogy the gathering of names, dates, places and information relating to kinship is adding to the field of genealogical science. From this standpoint, the gathering, analysis, evaluation and presentation of genealogical fact is of general worth, even though the data or fact gathered does not provide the desired solution to a particular genealogical problem. Just as in other sciences, the genealogist is not always able to make use of all the facts or data gathered, but others may find those facts or data to be the very solution to their particular genealogical problem. More people should realize this as they attempt to accomplish applied genealogical research. When they gather genealogical fact and it does not solve their particular problem, they have not failed in research, even though they may have failed to solve a particular problem. Their research has been productive to the science of genealogy as a whole and should be made known to others.

In this we see a need for better communication and correlation in genealogical research, not necessarily as an organization nor as small groups, but as the entire field of genealogical science. The publishing of family histories, genealogies, and the genealogical periodical literature fills part of this need, but a much broader effort in correlation and communication is needed.

With its interest in genealogy, the LDS Church might well be the organization to provide the leadership and stimulus for such an undertaking. Through its *Pedigree Referral Service* that Church is attempting to correlate genealogical research activity better by bringing people together who have interest in similar genealogical lines. The most modern electronic computer equipment is being used in this project and it is proving to be a workable program, though a herculean task.⁵

The LDS Genealogical Society is also filling part of the need for better communication in the field of genealogical science by its records acquisition and storage programs, as well as through its library services. Their new, modern and ingenious storage vault in a granite mountain southeast of Salt Lake City, Utah, provides the best possible protection

for the Church's genealogical collections. At this writing, negative copies of over 400,000 rolls of microfilm are safely stored in one of the six large sections of the vault. Their genealogical collections are from all parts of the world and are second to none in scope and availability. A branch library program is currently in operation which provides access to their master collection of microfilm through a rental program. At present there are more than thirty branch libraries, and others are preparing to enter the program.⁶

In a similar manner, other groups and institutions are attempting to fill the need in correlation and communication, but there is no broad action on a scientific plane. Most genealogists go forward with limited objectives of accomplishing applied research and do not feel that they have any contribution to make to the science of genealogy. In reality these people make up the field of genealogy, and their work adds to the field just as the research of scientists in other fields of study expands their respective sciences. In this it can be seen that we need to perform a better quality of research and should make the results known so that others might profit from the findings.

Genealogical Proof. With respect to knowledge and understanding, the researcher may gain genealogical knowledge through his *own observation* of genealogical events or circumstances (personal knowledge of genealogical phenomena), through the *oral testimony* of others, or through *transcribed testimony* (the preserved record). Of these three, transcribed testimony is the most often used, for the genealogist is primarily dependent on the preserved record.

Genealogical evidence is information, fact or data which identifies a genealogical event or circumstance, and it is possible that a researcher might gain the wrong facts pertaining to a particular event. In this it can be seen that *evidence itself is not proof but merely leads to proof*. Harland says: "Distinction should be made between evidence and proof. Evidence is the information received, whereas proof is the effect produced by this information."⁷

The presence of sufficient evidence of the proper quality can convince the mind that a genealogical event or circumstance actually took place or happened. Webster says that proof is the cogency of evidence that compels acceptance by the mind of a truth or a fact. He indicates that truth is the state of being the actual case.⁸ Neither of these statements is hard to believe and the researcher can well ponder them. Someone has stated that a person cannot attain real truth through scholarship; but in our limited definition of truth, we would suggest that one could gain the actual facts of a particular event, such as a birth or marriage, and hence could gain a genealogical truth.

Proving a genealogical fact to absolute certainty is quite an impossible task, except under certain conditions. Stevenson says: "... it must be clear that genealogical facts, except in rare instances, cannot be proven to absolute certainty. There are few things in life that can be so proven and matters of pedigree are no exception, unless it is possible to produce an eye-witness to such an event as a birth, marriage or death."⁹ He cites an example of a doctor who delivered a child, giving testimony as to the mother, but who was unable to give competent testimony of the father as the doctor had no personal knowledge.

In *complete identification* the genealogist attempts to prove an individual was born at a specific date, in a specific place, and of certain parentage, so the individual is not confused with any other person or family. In proving this to an absolute certainty, the researcher must have personal knowledge of each fact, and to prove it to others he must reproduce the events for their observation. This, of course, is impossible, so *the genealogist bases his proof on a preponderance of evidence* just as if he were in a court of law.

In the so-called "exact" sciences, such as chemistry or physics, the researcher is able to experiment and reproduce situations for personal observation. He can produce an environment to carry out specific experiments and can affect certain chemical or physical changes which can be observed. In this he can prove that certain elements exist and that their combination, under certain conditions,

brings about specific changes. An atomic reaction can be accomplished through this type of experimentation. Not only can it be done in America by American scientists, but it can be duplicated by scientists in Russia, France, China, and other countries.

Genealogy is a social science and has certain limitations when it comes to experimentation. Because of the many variables it is hard to predict cause and effect to any degree of accuracy. Some experimentation may be conducted through case study or some similar method, and the results observed and generalizations made; but with respect to genealogical events, the researcher is obliged to analyze such historical evidence as may have been preserved and must draw his conclusions from this. He cannot reproduce the actual event for observation. In a few instances the genealogist is able to witness an event and gain personal knowledge of the facts; but in most instances he must rely on the testimony of others, which might be oral or transcribed testimony.

The Classification of Evidence. As previously stated, uniform understanding and terminology has not yet been accomplished in the field of genealogical science and terms used to classify and evaluate genealogical evidence are no exception. This is probably because there is no "one" accepted authority in the field, though it might also be related to other factors.

In the United States, the American Society of Genealogists has attempted to accomplish uniformity through its text¹⁰ and through the writings of its members which have been carried in some of the better genealogical periodicals such as the *American Genealogist*, the *National Genealogical Society Quarterly*, and the *New England Historical and Genealogical Register*. Also, the LDS Genealogical Society has published considerable material intended for the genealogist. However, most of their work has concerned itself with specialized processing and tabulating procedures peculiar to that organization and really has little to do with actual research. Their main attempt at uniformity in terminology

was made in Harland's work which has been cited. Still, neither of these two organizations has been accepted by genealogists as "the" authority in genealogical research.

It is not uncommon to hear a genealogist talking about a "primary" record or about "original" evidence. For purpose of definition we may say that a document is either *the original* or *a copy*, that evidence is either *direct* or *circumstantial* in nature, and either *primary* or *secondary* as to its source. We have indicated that *evidence is actually information, fact or data which identifies phenomena*. We further indicated that genealogical evidence is obtained through (1) personal observation, (2) the oral testimony of others, or (3) transcribed testimony or the preserved record.

All evidence, whether from personal observation, oral testimony or from transcribed testimony, may be classified as "direct" or "circumstantial" in nature and may be classified as "primary" or "secondary" depending on its source. Transcribed testimony may be in the form of an original document or record or it may be a copy, but the evidence it produces may be given the same classification as that from personal observation or from oral testimony.

Several other terms and definitions are required of students in law but they are of no great concern to genealogical research and might well be laid aside. Such terms as relevant, irrelevant, opinion evidence, the hearsay evidence rule, etc., fit this category. For a good discussion of these the student is referred to Rubincam, *op. cit.*, pp. 37-48, or to a local law library which will have considerable material on evidence as it applies to law. For the purposes of this work we will consider (1) direct evidence, (2) circumstantial evidence, (3) primary evidence, (4) secondary evidence, and (5) original and copied records.

Direct evidence is information which immediately answers the question or problem at hand while *circumstantial evidence* gives a logical inference from which an answer might be gained. The evidence may be either correct or incorrect under both of these classifications.

Primary evidence is information which results from personal

knowledge. The informant was an eyewitness or was so closely associated with the event or circumstance that he had personal knowledge of it and recorded or reported it shortly after the event.

Secondary or hearsay evidence is information which is not the result of personal observation but comes from the testimony of others. When a considerable time period has elapsed in relation to primary evidence that evidence also may be classified as secondary because it was reported long after the event and the fallibility of memory enters in.

An original record or document is the first transcription of an event or circumstance in a particular manner, while a copy is any subsequent transcription resulting from the original. The possibility of copy error exists in any copy and they should be approached with this understanding. Copies are often certified as being correct copies, but that does not change the classification. A photostat is often considered the same as the original.

In practice, the researcher seldom obtains his genealogical information through personal observation or through oral testimony, but is primarily dependent on transcribed testimony or the preserved record.

The Evaluation of Evidence. *Direct evidence from a primary source* is logically the most desirable information, and where conflict exists, this combination should receive the greatest weight.

When direct evidence from a primary source is not obtainable, it is suggested that a *preponderance of circumstantial evidence from a primary source* would be next most desirable. Evidence from a secondary source does not generally carry as much weight as evidence from a primary source, though it is recognized that both are of value and both may have shortcomings.

An original document or record which produces direct evidence from a primary source would be more desirable than a copied record though it is recognized that both are of value and both may have shortcomings.

When evidence relating to a particular genealogical problem is in conflict it is necessary to make judgment as to which information should be accepted, and knowledge of the types and sources of evidence can be of definite value in making sound judgment.

It is our proposition that the rules and standards of evidence used in the legal profession are far too complex and involved for genealogy. Law becomes so complicated and technical at times that it rejects the evidence, turns the criminal free, and incarcerates the lawyers. This might sometimes be the right thing, but genealogical science need not go this far.

The genealogist should receive all information, analyze and classify it according to a simple and logical plan, evaluate it in relation to the problems at hand, and make the results known to the world. In summary, the following points are suggested:

1. Information which results from *personal observation* or from *personal knowledge* is more desirable than that which results from hearsay or from the testimony of others.

a) When information has its source in personal observation or personal knowledge it is *primary* or *first-hand evidence* if time is not a factor.

b) When information has its source in the testimony of others it is *secondary* or *hearsay evidence*.

2. *Oral testimony* produces primary evidence if the information was a result of personal observation or personal knowledge, and produces secondary evidence if the information was a result of testimony from another.

3. *Documentary testimony* (the preserved record) produces primary evidence if that testimony was the result of personal observation or personal knowledge, and produces secondary evidence if that testimony was from another.

a) An *original document or record* is the *first transcription* of an event or circumstance in a particular manner and form.

b) *Any subsequent transcription* resulting from the original is a *copy*.

A further recommendation is that *evidence be gathered from any and all sources pertinent to the problem*, but that the researcher need not search "all" sources to establish proof. Direct evidence from a primary source may be sufficient, though it should be remembered that "in the mouth of two or three witnesses shall every word be established."¹¹ We do not concur with those who suggest that every source in every jurisdiction must be exhausted in order to establish proof. If the researcher cannot obtain direct evidence, he should attempt to obtain a preponderance of circumstantial evidence to establish the event or circumstance.

The transcription of testimony does not adversely affect the source of the evidence which it produces. *A document or record constructed at or near the time of an event or circumstance, which transcription was a result of personal observation or personal knowledge, can produce the best evidence obtainable.* This is especially true pertaining to events and circumstances which have long since occurred. Problems of mind and matter take their toll on oral testimony, and the genealogist must place much emphasis on the preserved record.

Jurisdictions and Sources. Genealogical information which the researcher obtains is directly dependent upon the influence that the individual has with society. Someone has stated that "a man is the result of his environment," and the genealogist could say "genealogical information is a result of man's intercourse with his environment." The greater the influence and association with society, the greater the genealogical information which will result. The "hermit" or "recluse" who has little to do with society will leave little genealogical information. Oral testimony will be scant and highly secondary in relation to him, and transcribed testimony will be limited both in quantity and quality. Possibly the only documents and records which result in such a case are those mandatory by law, such as death and burial information or documents relating to real and personal property.

In a like manner, those who withdraw themselves from society for a limited time for some particular reason may

leave little genealogical information for that period of time or pertaining to a particular event or circumstance. An illegitimate birth falls into such a category. It is not uncommon for such an event to be "hush-hush" or for the participant to conveniently take a trip to a distant place for a year or so. Unless there was legal action in a case of this nature, there is little chance that transcribed testimony will be obtainable pertaining to names, dates, places, etc. On the other hand, it is often impossible to hide such an event from society. Oral testimony, though it may be highly secondary, may indeed be extant. The researcher may be surprised at what a relative, an associate or an old-timer might remember pertaining to such events.

Those individuals and families who took their normal part in society, who associated with others, who came in contact with the law, who went to church, who purchased land and who in numerous other ways participated in genealogical events and circumstances, can be located in the records. Those who were exceptionally good and those who were exceptionally bad may be found more often than those who, for the want of popularity or trouble, did not become of record.

The most important jurisdictions of interest to the genealogist are (1) social-commercial, (2) ecclesiastical and (3) civil or governmental.

Such *social and commercial institutions* as the home, the school, the hospital, the lodge, club, or fraternity, the insurance company or other particular business concern, have had their influence upon the individual and vice-versa, with the preservation of genealogical information resulting. Institutions such as libraries, archives, and societies have specialized in the preservation of such information.

Ecclesiastical organizations including the church, the parish, the mosque, the shrine, the ward, the branch or other particular religious jurisdictions have proven to be a great influence in the lives of people. Many genealogical events and circumstances transpired under ecclesiastical authority, and this jurisdiction has been the repository of much valuable genealogical information.

Civil or governmental jurisdictions have also had a great influence in the lives of individuals and they continue to do so. The local jurisdiction, including the village or hamlet, the township, the town or city, has a strong influence, as does that of the county, state and nation, or their equivalent. In many instances these are the most productive jurisdictions with respect to genealogical facts of birth, marriage, death, ownership of property, movement of peoples, disputes between individuals, military activity and so forth.

These jurisdictions become some of the more important factors in defining research objectives and in obtaining genealogical facts. The researcher must study these jurisdictions, gain a knowledge of their history and background and determine the actual influence they had upon his ancestors.

In gathering genealogical information from the above listed jurisdictions, the researcher might systematically do so by considering the following sources:

1. Gain basic genealogical information through:
 - a) Personal knowledge and memory
 - b) Oral testimony and family tradition
 - (1) From immediate relatives
 - (2) From distant relatives
 - (3) From associates and old timers
 - c) Documentary testimony from home sources
 - (1) Books and manuscripts
 - (2) Letters and clippings
 - (3) Certificates and photographs
 - (4) Land and estate documents
 - (5) Business-employment records
 - (6) Military and other miscellaneous documents and records
2. Determine the extent of previous research through:
 - a) Special genealogical collections of the LDS Church
 - (1) The Pedigree Referral Service
 - (2) The Temple Records Index Bureau
 - (3) The Church Records Archives collections
 - b) Special printed secondary materials of libraries, archives and societies

- (1) Biographical works
 - (2) Family and regional histories
 - (3) Genealogical dictionaries and indexes
 - (4) Genealogies and pedigrees
 - (5) Periodical literature
3. Gain new genealogical facts through:
- a) Special "early Church and Utah" sources if LDS-connected
 - (1) Membership collections
 - (2) Church emigration records
 - (3) Church ordinance collections
 - (4) Special collections of the Church Historian
 - (5) Miscellaneous early Church and Utah sources
 - b) Special primary sources of the jurisdictions of association
 - (1) Church
 - (2) Cemetery-sexton
 - (3) Census-mortality
 - (4) Court-legislative
 - (5) Emigration-immigration
 - (6) Land-property
 - (7) Military-naval
 - (8) Probate-guardianship
 - (9) Social-commercial
 - (10) Vital

Finally, it should be made known that the authors believe in God and in *personal inspiration*. Most of our time thus far spent has been oriented to external sources of information, but we believe that each individual has the right to personal inspiration from God. We believe that each individual has the Light of Christ in his bosom and some have the Holy Ghost as their constant guide and companion to lead them unto all truth. Each person should so live his life as to gain such inspiration and guidance as is needed to meet his life's goals. We give testimony that the Lord expects us to do everything in our power to accomplish our righteous objectives, and if we do this He will provide us with light and knowledge to accomplish the necessary tasks. It is in rare instances that He gives us direct revela-

tion to solve a genealogical problem, but He will inspire us to search the proper sources, to make the proper decisions, or He will move upon others to assist in many different ways. "Study, search and pray."

Before making a detailed study of the genealogical sources listed above it is appropriate that we consider techniques in library use and notekeeping, and the next chapters deal with these subjects.

¹Donald L. Jacobus, "The Value of Searching Original Records." *The American Genealogist*, XL (July, 1964), pp. 170-171.

²Milton Rubincam (ed.), *Genealogical Research Methods and Sources* (Washington: The American Society of Genealogists, 1960), pp. 37-48.

³Derek Harland, *Genealogical Research Standards* (Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft, Inc., 1963), chapters 1-4.

⁴Webster, *op. cit.*, "phenomena."

⁵For a thorough explanation of the Pedigree Referral Service see *Genealogical Instruction Manual*, *op. cit.*, supplement "B."

⁶The Genealogical Society of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. "Branch Library System Continues to Grow," *The Genealogical Society Observer*, XI (June, 1966), 10.

⁷Harland, *op. cit.*, p. 51.

⁸Webster, *op. cit.*, "truth."

⁹Rubincam, *op. cit.*, p. 38.

¹⁰*Ibid.*

¹¹II Cor. 13:1.

Part II

RESEARCH TOOLS AND
LIBRARY USE



Chapter 5

CLASSIFICATION AND CATALOGING SYSTEMS

It is well for the genealogist to gain an understanding of library classification and cataloging systems, for a great deal of his time is spent using such facilities. The researcher must therefore become familiar with the system associated with the particular library or archives of interest to him.

It is emphasized that no two libraries are exactly alike, so the researcher will have to gain experience as he visits each one. Possibly the greatest barrier to proper library use is the fear that someone will recognize that one knows nothing about the system in use. Learning is good, and there is nothing wrong with asking questions and even informing library personnel that one is "green" and would like assistance.

This discussion will only cover the essentials of library science. For further information on library procedure, the student is referred to *The 1-2-3 Guide to Libraries* by Hattie M. Knight, Brigham Young University, Provo, Utah, 1964. Mrs. Knight, Assistant Professor of Library Science, has been supervising the library science program for some time at Brigham Young University and is well qualified in the field. Also a genealogist in her own right, she has done much to help and encourage genealogy students at BYU.

Libraries are the repositories of man's accumulated knowledge, and various systems have been employed to arrange and file this material. Most libraries are usually divided into departments or sections where specialized services or information might be provided. Some of the usual library departments or sections might be the *circulation* de-

partment, the *reserve book* section, the *reference* section, the *periodicals* section, the *government documents* section, and various other departments and sections to meet specialized needs.

The *card catalog is the key to the library's holdings*, and even though the researcher becomes familiar with the various departments and sections, and knows that specialized materials are filed in certain places, he still must use the card catalog to gain the maximum benefit from the library holdings.

The classification and cataloging system employed determines how and where library material will be shelved. Two of the most popular systems are the Library of Congress System and the Dewey Decimal System. Both Brigham Young University and the LDS Genealogical Society use the Dewey Decimal System with some adaptation. The LDS Genealogical Society had its own system until 1962 when the administration decided to transfer to the Dewey Decimal System.

The following two illustrations will help to show arrangement of materials in the two systems mentioned.

Library of Congress Classification

A	General Works
B	Philosophy and Religion
C	History and Auxiliary Sciences
D	History and Topography (excluding America)
EF	America
G	Geography and Anthropology
H	Social Sciences
J	Political Science
K	Law
L	Education
M	Music
N	Fine Arts
P	Language and Literature
Q	Science
R	Medicine
S	Agriculture
T	Technology
U	Military Science
V	Naval Science
Z	Bibliography and Library Science

The letters I, O, W, X and Y are reserved for future expansion.

Dewey Decimal Classification

000	GENERAL WORKS
100	PHILOSOPHY
200	RELIGION
300	SOCIAL SCIENCES (SOCIOLOGY)
400	LANGUAGE (PHILOLOGY)
500	(PURE) SCIENCE
600	TECHNOLOGY (USEFUL ARTS)
700	THE ARTS (FINE ARTS)
800	LITERATURE
900	HISTORY (AND GEOGRAPHY)

In the Dewey Decimal system expansion is possible so that each classification can be enlarged to include all related fields or areas of learning.¹

The following divisions of "History" and of "Genealogy" within the history classification, are listed below to show how expansion of the Dewey system is carried out.²

900	History	925	Scientists
901	Philosophy, civilization	926	Persons in technology
902	Handbooks & outlines	927	Persons in arts & recreation
903	Dictionaries & encyclopedias	928	Persons in literature
904	Essays & lectures	929	Genealogy & heraldry
905	Periodicals	930	Ancient history
906	Organizations & societies	931	China
907	Study & teaching	932	Egypt
908	Collections	933	Judea
909	Medieval & modern world	934	India
910	Geography, travels	935	Mesopotamian & other empires
911	Historical geography	936	Ancient European tribes
912	Atlases & maps	937	Rome
913	Antiquities	938	Greece
914	Geography of Europe	939	Other Mediterranean
915	Geography of Asia	940	Europe
916	Geography of Africa	941	Scotland & Ireland
917	Geography of North America	942	England
918	Geography of South America	943	Germany & central Europe
919	Geography of other places	944	France
920	Biography	945	Italy
921	Philosophers	946	Spain & Portugal
922	Religious leaders	947	USSR & adjacent areas
923	Persons in social sciences	948	Scandinavia
924	Philologists	949	Other areas of Europe

- | | | | |
|-----|--|-----|--------------------------------|
| 950 | Asia | 976 | South central states |
| 951 | China & Korea | 977 | North central states |
| 952 | Japan & adjacent areas | 978 | Western states |
| 953 | Arabian Peninsula | 979 | Far western states & Alaska |
| 954 | Subcontinent of India | 980 | South America |
| 955 | Iran (Persia) | 981 | Brazil |
| 956 | Near East (Middle East) | 982 | Argentina |
| 957 | Siberia | 983 | Chile |
| 958 | Central Asia | 984 | Bolivia |
| 959 | Southeast Asia | 985 | Peru |
| 960 | Africa | 986 | Colombia, Panama, Ecuador |
| 961 | North Africa | 987 | Venezuela |
| 962 | Egypt & Sudan | 988 | Guiana |
| 963 | Ethiopia (Abyssinia) | 989 | Paraguay & Uruguay |
| 964 | Morocco | 990 | Pacific Ocean islands |
| 965 | Algeria | 991 | Indonesia & Philippine Islands |
| 966 | West Africa | 992 | Sunda Islands |
| 967 | Central (Equatorial) Africa | 993 | New Zealand & Melanesia |
| 968 | South Africa | 994 | Australia |
| 969 | South Indian Ocean islands | 995 | New Guinea (Papua) |
| 970 | North America | 996 | Polynesia, Micronesia, Hawaii |
| 971 | Canada | | |
| 972 | Mexico & Caribbean | 997 | Atlantic Ocean islands |
| 973 | United States | 998 | Arctic Regions |
| 974 | Northeastern states | 999 | Antarctic Regions |
| 975 | Southeastern states | | |
| 929 | Genealogy and heraldry | | |
| .1 | Genealogy | | |
| | Including methods and tools of genealogy, genealogical forms and blanks | | |
| .2 | Family histories | | |
| .3 | Genealogical sources | | |
| | Including registers, wills, tax lists, census records, court records, intended for genealogical purposes | | |
| .4 | Personal names | | |
| | Class place names [<i>formerly</i> †929.4] in 910.3 | | |
| .5 | Epitaphs | | |
| | <i>For collections having literary interest, see 808.88</i> | | |
| .6 | Heraldry | | |
| | Peerage and royal houses | | |
| | Including titles of honor, rank precedence; landed gentry | | |
| .71 | Orders of knighthood | | |

- .72-.799 Royal houses, nobility, gentry of Europe
 Divide like 942-949.9, including Scotland and Ireland in
 929.72, e.g., royal houses of France 929.74, Scottish peer-
 age 929.72
- .799 9 Royal houses, nobility, gentry of countries outside Europe
 Divide like 930-999, e.g., Japanese noblemen 929.799 952
- .8 Armorial bearings
 Including coats of arms, crests, seals
- .9 Flags
 Including national, state, ship, ownership flags; flag etiquette

In addition to subject classification, the Dewey system also includes a method of identifying material by locality. The following list includes the Dewey decimal numbers for various countries and regions of the world. This list may also serve as a guide in locating material in the library.

DECIMAL NUMBERS FOR COUNTRIES AND REGIONS

941	Scotland	971.3	Ontario
942	England	971.4	Quebec
942.9	Wales	971.5	New Brunswick
943	Germany	971.6	Nova Scotia
943.1	Prussia	972	Mexico
943.3	Bavaria	973	United States
943.6	Austria		
943.7	Czechoslovakia	974	Northeastern states
943.8	Poland	974.1	Maine
943.9	Hungary	974.2	New Hampshire
944	France	974.3	Vermont
945	Italy	974.4	Massachusetts
946	Spain	974.5	Rhode Island
947	Russia	974.6	Connecticut
947.1	Finland	974.7	New York
948	Scandinavia	974.8	Pennsylvania
948.1	Norway	974.9	New Jersey
948.5	Sweden		
948.9	Denmark	975	Southeastern states
949.1	Iceland	975.1	Delaware
949.2	Netherlands (Holland)	975.2	Maryland
949.3	Belgium	975.3	District of Columbia
949.4	Switzerland	975.4	West Virginia
949.5	Greece	975.5	Virginia
971	Canada	975.6	North Carolina
971.1	British Columbia	975.7	South Carolina
971.2	Canadian Northwest		

	975.8	Georgia		978.6	Montana
	975.9	Florida		978.7	Wyoming
976		South Central States		978.8	Colorado
	976.1	Alabama		978.9	New Mexico
	976.2	Mississippi	979		Far Western States
	976.3	Louisiana		979.1	Arizona
	976.4	Texas		979.2	Utah
	976.6	Oklahoma		979.3	Nevada
	976.7	Arkansas		979.4	California
	976.8	Tennessee		979.5	Oregon
	976.9	Kentucky		979.6	Idaho
977		North Central States		979.7	Washington
	977.1	Ohio		979.8	Alaska
	977.2	Indiana	980		South America
	977.3	Illinois	981		Brazil
	977.4	Michigan	982		Argentina
	977.5	Wisconsin	983		Chile
	977.6	Minnesota	984		Bolivia
	977.7	Iowa	985		Peru
	977.8	Missouri	986.1		Colombia
978		Western States	986.2		Panama
	978.1	Kansas	986.6		Ecuador
	978.2	Nebraska	987		Venezuela
	978.3	South Dakota	988		Guiana
	978.4	North Dakota	989.2		Paraguay
			989.5		Uruguay
			990		Pacific Ocean Islands

The Dewey Decimal number becomes part of the call number which is placed on the book, manuscript, microfilm, etc., and for further enlightenment we quote from Knight:

The call number is the key to the location of the book in the library. It is made up of the Dewey classification number to indicate the subject and beneath that the symbol to represent the author, called the book or author number. Librarians often speak of the book number as the Cutter number, named for the man who devised the table, Charles A. Cutter. It is made up of one letter or more for the author's last name and a number to identify him further and to make it possible for all books with the same class number to be placed in alphabetical order by author on the shelves. If the same author has written two or more books on one subject, the first letter of the title is added to the call number and is called the work number or letter. If further identification is needed, volume number or date may be added also. This makes it possible to have a slightly different call number for every title in the library regardless of how nearly two books may be alike as to author and subject matter. Only other copies of the same book should have

call numbers alike, and even they are identified by copy numbers or accession numbers.³

The J. Reuben Clark, Jr., Library. Brigham Young University has an excellent library, both in facility and content, though its genealogical collection is not the greatest in the West. However, in its defense we must relate that the Utah Valley Library recently combined their genealogical collection with that of the University, which certainly strengthens its collection. The University library is also a branch of the LDS Genealogical Society and has access to the vast holdings of that organization. The Clark Library does not have the collection of original records of a genealogical nature that the LDS Genealogical Society has, but the collection of reference works and historical materials, and the fact that the Library is a branch of the LDS Genealogical Society, make it important to the genealogist.

The arrangement of books in the J. Reuben Clark Library and the listing of material in the card catalog are very well explained in a booklet entitled *To Help You Use The Library*⁴, published by Brigham Young University. However, the publication is no longer in print and we therefore quote from it:

Shelving of books in a library necessitates some kind of order. The scheme used by the Brigham Young University Library is called the Dewey Decimal Classification System. It arranges books on the shelf according to subject and alphabetically by author within a given subject group. Each book is given a distinct number which is referred to as the *Call Number*. It consists of two parts: the class or subject number which is placed above, and the author number which appears immediately below.

Under this system all knowledge is divided into ten main groups, each of these groups into ten more groups, and so on to the most minute subdivisions.

As mentioned above, since there are many books on the same subject, some device is necessary to distinguish one book from another and to facilitate an orderly arrangement on the shelf. Such a device is the *Book Number*. It is a symbol consisting of the first letter (in some cases the first two) of the author's last name and a number derived from a printed list. Furthermore, if an author writes more than one book on the same subject, the books are distinguished by adding a work letter to the book number.

Although the cards are filed in the Public Catalog alphabetically, the large number of entries makes it necessary to have special filing rules. The following are some of the important ones which you should keep in mind when looking for a book:

1. ARTICLES

When the first word of a title is an article (a, an or the), it is disregarded in the filing. This is true of articles in foreign languages also.

The Genius
Genius and Valour
A Genius in the Family

2. M'Mc.

Names beginning with M' and Mc are filed as though they were spelled Mac.

McCune
MacCunn
McCurdy

3. COMMON ABBREVIATIONS.

Common abbreviations are arranged as though they were spelled out.

Dr. filed as Doctor
Mr. filed as Mister
Mrs. filed as Mistress
St. filed as Saint
U. S. filed as United States

4. AUTHOR CARDS PRECEDE SUBJECT CARDS.

Author cards precede subject cards; that is, works by an author are filed before works about him.

5. ORDER OF ENTRIES under same word.

When the same word is used for several kinds of headings, it is arranged in the following order: person, place, subject, title.

Maine, Sir Henry J. S. -(person)
Maine -(place)
Maine (battleship) -(subject)
Maine Beautiful -(title)

6. ORGANIZATIONS AS AUTHORS.

An "Author" may be an organization, a government, an institution, or a society. If so, the author card may be found under some such heading as the following:

American Pharmaceutical Association
 New Jersey. Legislature
 U. S. Department of State
 U. S. Committee on Farm Tenancy

7. PSEUDONYMS

Books are listed under the author's real name with a cross reference from his pseudonym if he has one.

Twain, Mark, pseud. *see* Clemens, Samuel Langhorne

8. SOCIETIES AND INSTITUTIONS

Publications of societies, institutions, etc., are under the name of the society or institution, not under the words Bulletin, Proceedings, Transactions, etc.

American Dietetic Association
 Transactions

9. NUMERALS

Numerals are filed as if spelled out: 1 as one; 40,000 as forty thousand.

10. WORD-BY-WORD FILING

Cards are filed in the catalog alphabetically under a word-by-word arrangement. Many dictionaries, periodical indexes, and other reference books use a letter-by-letter arrangement. The difference between the two systems is quite significant and may be illustrated by the following two examples:

Word-by-word Filing

New Jersey
 New York
 Newark
 Newspapers
 Newton
 Next to Valour

Letter-by-letter Filing

Newark
 New Jersey
 Newspapers
 Newton
 New York
 Next to Valour

11. TO SAVE TIME

If you have a reference such as Smith, *Constructive Ethics*, do not search under Smith, unless you know the author's initials, because there are hundreds of cards under that name. Look under the subject "Ethics" or under the title.

In using the Clark Library, the researcher should be alert to the fact that some reference materials are on the main level and some on other levels where specialized books are shelved. The genealogist will want to use maps, atlases,

gazetteers, directories, etc., and will want to check historical and religious works as well as others. He must therefore be prepared to do research in several departments and divisions of the Library. As an example, the researcher often uses *County Inventories* which were prepared by the Historical Records Survey Project, Works Project Administration. These give valuable historical data about counties and list the record holdings of particular jurisdictions. In the Clark Library these are classified under Social Science and are to be found on the first level at the present time (1967). After looking at those publications he may want to see if the Library has a published county history for his county of interest. These are found on the fourth level in the 900's. He may also determine that his ancestor belonged to a particular religious denomination, and the Library may have published material on the denomination and have it filed in the 200's. He may want to look at microfilmed material which is on the fourth level or map collections on the second level. Perhaps this is sufficient to emphasize that one must use his imagination and have an inquisitive mind.

The LDS Genealogical Society Library. The LDS Genealogical Society is located in Salt Lake City, Utah, and has one of the finest genealogical collections in the world.

The LDS Genealogical Society Library began converting to the Dewey Decimal system in 1964 and at the present time is nearing the completion of that work. Prior to this time it had an original system. The card catalog is the index to the Library's collections, and cards are filed together in an alphabetical arrangement by (1) Author, (2) Title, (3) Subject, and (4) Locality. This is a variation of the Dewey system and aids the researcher in finding information for a specific locality.

In order to utilize the Genealogical Society's collections it is necessary to understand some peculiarities with respect to their card catalog. Originally the Society had two major catalogs where cards were filed by locality or by surname. These were called the "Locality File" and the "Surname File." All of the Society's holdings were identified in either the Locality File or the Surname File or in both. At the

inception of the Dewey Decimal filing system in 1964, it was decided that a form of the surname file should be maintained; hence the Society still has a "Surname Index File" which includes cards pertaining to holdings which have been indexed. Most of the microfilm holdings were filed on a locality basis and many have not yet been reclassified; hence there is still a version of the old "Locality File." Anyone using the Society's holdings must therefore use the new "Dictionary Catalog," the new "Surname Index File", and the old "Locality File" to make sure he has identified possible holdings.⁵

The Society also maintains special card files for collections peculiar to the Genealogical Society. These include an "Early Church Information File," a special LDS "Pedigree Index File," a file on "Nauvoo Baptisms for the Dead," and a file containing "Miscellaneous Marriages" of persons married in Utah, Idaho and Wyoming. These collections are discussed in detail in a later chapter covering LDS Church records.

The reference section of the Genealogical Society reflects the Dewey system in the shelving of its books, just as does the J. Reuben Clark Library at Brigham Young University. In addition to the usual reference materials, the Genealogical Society is initiating registers with reference call numbers conveniently listed in book form. When the Society's holdings for a particular record group are complete a special register is created. This is the case with ward and branch records of the LDS Church, the U.S. Federal census from 1790 through 1880, and Scottish Vital Records Indexes as well as with other collections. One should become familiar with these registers, as their use eliminates unnecessary searching in the card catalog and makes the total series of a particular collection more understandable.

Both the Clark Library and the Genealogical Society have "open stacks" so the researcher may have free access to the books and manuscripts. Of course there are rare collections and restricted works which require special permission for use in both libraries.

The Genealogical Society has adapted the Dewey Decimal system to its specialized collection of genealogical materials, and slight variations from the norm will be noted. In addition to the numerical classification by subject and region or country, the Genealogical Society has its own record category designations, a list of which follows.

Record Category designations used in classifying materials at the Genealogical Society, Salt Lake City, Utah.

A2	Archives	M21	Registration of male population
A3	Bibliographies	M22	Service records—including discharge
A4	Indexes	M23	List of officers and men
A5	Inventories	M24	Military pensions
A6	Registers	M25	Histories including regimental histories
B2	Periodicals	M26	Military documents, correspondence and official reports
B3	Newspapers		
C2	Associations	M3	Pensions not military pensions
C3	Clubs	N2	Civil records
C4	Societies	P2	Court records (include everything except probate)
D2	Genealogy	P3	Laws, statutes, legislative acts
D21	Oral genealogies	P4	Adoption
D22	Peerage	R2	Land & Property
D23	Visitations	R21	Land
D3	Biography	R22	Property
E2	Geography	R23	Property insurance
E3	Atlases	R4	Taxation
E4	Directories	S2	Probate & guardianship
E5	Gazetteers	U2	Occupations
E6	Guidebooks	U21	Apprenticeship
E7	Maps	U22	Guilds
E8	Postal guides	U23	Trades
F2	National groups	U24	Professions
H2	History	U3	Business enterprises
H3	Economic history	V2	Vital records (life insurance)
H4	Political history	V21	Births
J2	Schools	V22	Cemeteries & sexton's records
J3	Orphans and orphan-asylums	V23	Deaths
J4	Hospitals	V24	Divorce
K2	Church (include everything except parish registers)		
K21	Monastery & Church orders (not vital records)		
M2	Military records & military pensions		

V25	Marriages	W3	Shipping lists & passenger lists
V26	Parish registers	W4	Passports
V27	Bishop's transcripts—or 2nd copies of parish regis- ters	W5	Naturalization
V28	Obituaries	W6	Citizenship
W2	Emigration and immigration (movement of people)	X2p	Census
		X3	Election records (Electorate)

¹Hattie M. Knight, *The 1-2-3 Guide to Libraries* (Provo, Utah: BYU Press, 1964).

²*Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index Devised by Melvil Dewey* (2 vols., 16th ed., Essex Co., New York: Forrest Press, Inc., 1958), I, p. 1058.

³Knight op. cit. p. 15.

⁴*To Help You Use the Library* (Brigham Young University, April, 1960), pp. 3-7.

⁵The old classification system was explained on pages 77-81 (for reference purposes) of Wright and Pratts *Key To Genealogical Research Essentials*.

Chapter 6

REFERENCE MATERIALS

No researcher can be successful without the help of reference materials, and a good knowledge of their nature and use is essential. The genealogist is continually faced with such problems as determining the location of a parish, town or some other locality; finding when it was organized and facts about its parent jurisdiction; learning the content and availability of source materials; and determining how related sciences can assist in genealogical research.

Mrs. Knight says: "The Reference Department is the place to go to find dictionaries, encyclopedias, indexes . . . , bibliographies, and other books needed to 'look it up' when specific information is needed."¹

With regard to reference books she says:

Any book may become a reference book if it is used as a source of a fact or of definite information on a subject. When reference books are spoken of, such things as dictionaries, encyclopedias, indexes, bibliographies, biographical dictionaries, yearbooks and handbooks are thought of. Some of these are very general in nature; others are specialized.²

The genealogist has some need for general reference materials such as dictionaries, encyclopedias and general bibliographic works. Listings of these may be found in such books as *Basic Reference Sources* by Louis Shores, *Guide to Reference Books* by Constance M. Winchell, *Reference Books* by Mary Neill Barton, or in *The 1-2-3 Guide to Libraries* by Hattie M. Knight, which has already been mentioned.

Genealogy also concerns itself with many other fields of learning, such as history and geography, heraldry and armory, biography, chronology, etymology, paleography,

library science and others. Hence, there is need for special reference materials for genealogical research.

The following reference works are considered to be some of the more important with respect to British and North American genealogical research. It should be recognized *that this is a minimal list of general references* and that many others exist of a general nature and many specialized works are extant with respect to certain geographical areas. The researcher must study his geographical region of interest and must search library materials and other guides for specific information on specialized genealogical reference materials.

Reference Works on Genealogical Methodology. In the opinion of the authors, the following select list represents the best texts currently available on the fundamentals of genealogy, on British research and on North American genealogical research:

- Falley, Margaret Dickson. *Irish and Scotch-Irish Ancestral Research*. 2 vols. Strasburg, Virginia: Shenandoah Publishing House, 1962.
- Freedman, Paul. *The Principles of Scientific Research*. New York: Pergamen Press, 1960.
- Gardner, David E. and Smith, Frank. *Genealogical Research in England and Wales*. 3 vols. Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft, Inc., 1946-1964.
- Hansen, Niel T. *Guide to Genealogical Sources of Australia and New Zealand*. Melbourne, Australia: The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, 1961.
- Jaussi, Lareen R. and Chaston, Gloria D. *Fundamentals of Genealogical Research*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1966.
- Rubincam, Milton (ed.) *Genealogical Research Methods and Sources*. Washington: The American Society of Genealogists, 1960.

Stevenson, Noel C. *Search and Research*. rev. ed. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1959.

Wagner, Anthony. *English Genealogy*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1960.

Reference Works on Related Sciences

The following select list represents books or collections of books which deal in detail with dates and the calendar or chronology:

Bennett, Archibald F. *A Guide for Genealogical Research*. 2nd ed. Salt Lake City, Utah: The Genealogical Society of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, 1960.

Bond, John J. *Handy-Book of Rules and Tables for Verifying Dates with the Christian Era*. 4th ed. London: George Bell and Sons, 1889.

Cheney, C. R. *Handbook of Dates of English History*. London: Royal Historical Society, 1955.

The Encyclopedia Americana. 30 vols. New York: Americana Corp., 1963.

The Encyclopedia Britannica. 24 vols. Chicago: William Benton Co., 1963.

Vincent, Benjamin. *Haydn's Dictionary of Dates and Universal Information*. London: E. Moxon, son, and Co., C1873.

The following list represents publications dealing with names:

Arthur, William. *An Etymological Dictionary of Family and Christian Names*. New York: Sheldon, Blakeman and Co., 1857.

Barber, Henry. *British Family Names: Their Origin and Meaning, with Lists of Scandinavian, Frisian, Anglo-Saxon, and Norman Names*. London: Eliot Stock, 1894.

Baring-Gould, S. *Family Names and Their Story*. Philadelphia: J. B. Lippincott Co., 1910.

- Parnhart, Clarence L. (ed.) *The New Century Cyclopedia of Names*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., 1954.
- Reaney, P. H. *A Dictionary of British Surnames*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1958.
- Shankle, George E. *American Nicknames, Their Origin and Significance*. 2nd ed. New York: H. W. Wilson Co., 1955.
- Withycombe, E. G. *The Oxford Dictionary of English Christian Names*. 2nd ed. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1950.

Many published works are available which deal with heraldry and its counterparts, but the following list represents some of the more authoritative texts:

- Bolton, Charles Knowles. *Bolton's American Armory*. A record of Coats of Arms which have been in use within the present bounds of the United States. F. W. Faxon Co., 1927.
- Burke, Sir Bernard. *The General Armory of England, Scotland, Ireland, and Wales*. London: Harrison and Sons, 1884.
- Crozier, William Armstrong. *Crozier's General Armory*. A Registry of American Families entitled to Coat Armor. New York: Fox, Duffield and Co., 1904.
- Hennessee, W. E. *Your Family Coat of Arms*. Salisbury, North Carolina: The American Heraldic Association, 1952.
- Kephart, Calvin. *Origin of Armorial Insignia in Europe*. A contribution to Genealogy and History. Washington: The National Genealogical Society, 1953.
- Moncreiffe, Ian and Don Pottinger. *Simple Heraldry*. London: Thomas Nelson and Sons, Ltd., 1953.
- Scott-Giles, C. W. and Brooke-Little, J. P. *Boutell's Heraldry*. rev. ed. New York: Frederick Warne and Co., Ltd., 1963.

Publications on history and geography are extremely valuable to the genealogist, particularly in relation to migration and settlement. The following list contains references known to be of direct concern to the British and North American genealogist:

- Adams, James Truslow. *Atlas of American History*. New York: Charles Scribner and Sons, 1943.
- Andrews, Charles M. *The Colonial Period of American History*. 3 vols. New Haven and London: Yale University Press, 1934 and 1964.
- Barck, Oscar Theodore Jr. and Lefler, Hugh Talmage. *Colonial America*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1958.
- Billington, Ray Allen. *Westward Expansion*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1960.
- Chitwood, Oliver Perry. *A History of Colonial America*. New York: Harper and Brothers Publishers, 1948.
- Hart, Albert B. *American History Atlas*. 9th rev. ed. Chicago: Deneyer-Geppert, 1953.
- Langer, W. D. *An Encyclopedia of World History*, rev. ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1952.
- Lewis, Marcus W. *The Development of Early Immigrant Trails East of the Mississippi River*. Washington: The National Genealogical Society, 1933.
- Paullin, Charles Oscar. *Atlas of the Historical Geography of the United States*. Washington: Carnegie Institute and American Geographic Society, 1932.
- Sheppard, William Robert. *Historical Atlas*. 8th ed. Pickersville, Maryland: Colonial Offset Co., 1956.
- Victoria History of the Counties of England*. Westminster: Archibald Constable and Co., Ltd. (n.d.).

The researcher is constantly referring to publications on topography or places and the following bibliographic list represents some of the more important references in this area:

- American Library Directory*. New York: R. R. Bowker Co., 1965.
- Bartholomew, John. *The Survey Gazetteer of the British Isles*. Edinburgh: John Bartholomew and Son Ltd., 1963.
- (ed.) *The Times Atlas of the World*. 5 vols.

Mid-century ed. London: The Times Publishing Co., Ltd., 1955-1959.

Brown, Karl. (comp.) *American Library Directory*. New York: R. R. Bowker Co., 1954.

Bullinger's Postal and Shippers' Guide for the United States and Canada. Westwood, New Jersey: Bullinger's Guides, Inc., 1966.

Everton, George et al. *The Handybook for Genealogists*. 4th ed. rev. and enl. Logan, Utah: Everton Publishers, 1962.

Gardner, David E. and Smith, Frank. *Genealogical Atlas of England and Wales*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1960.

Gazetteer of Canada. 4 vols. Ottawa: Canadian Board on Genealogical Names, 1952-1958.

Historical Societies and Agencies in the United States and Canada 1965-66; a Directory. Nashville, Tennessee: American Association for State and Local History, 1965.

International Library Directory. London: A. P. Wales Organization, 1963.

Kirkham, E. Kay. *The Counties of the United States and Their Genealogical Value*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1964.

Lewis, Samuel. *A Topographical Dictionary of England*. 4 vols. London: Samuel Lewis and Co., 1831 and 1833.

———. *A Topographical Dictionary of Wales*. London: Samuel Lewis and Co., 1833.

Municipal Yearbook. (Annual publication listing officials and addresses, public libraries in Britain, etc.) London: Municipal Journal, Ltd., (n.d.)

Rand McNally Commercial Atlas and Marketing Guide. 97th ed. New York: Rand McNally and Co., 1966.

Rand McNally Standard World Atlas. Chicago: Rand McNally and Co., 1951.

Seltzer, Leon E. (ed.) *The Columbia Lippincott Gazetteer of the World*. New York: H. W. Wilson Co., 1955.

United States Post Office Department. *Directory of Post Offices*. Washington: U. S. Government Printing Office, 1965.

Webster's Geographical Dictionary. Springfield, Mass: G. and C. Merriam Co., 1957.

Library science itself is a field of special significance to the genealogist. The following list represents several works dealing with bibliography or library science:

Barton, Mary Neill (comp.) *Reference Books*. Baltimore, Maryland: Enoch Pratt Free Public Library, 1962.

Carter, Mary Duncan and Bonk, Wallace John. *Building Library Collections*. New York: The Scarecrow Press, Inc., 1959.

Evans, Charles. *American Bibliography*. New York: Peter Smith Co., 1941.

Kelly, James. *The American Catalogue of Books*. New York: Peter Smith Co., 1938.

Knight, Hattie M. *The 1-2-3 Guide to Libraries*. Provo, Utah: Brigham Young University Press, 1964.

Mudge, Isadore Gilbert. *New Guide to Reference Books*. Chicago: American Library Association, 1923.

Prakken, Sarah L. (ed.) *Books in Print*. New York: R. R. Bowker Co., 1961.

The Publishers Trade List Annual. New York: R. R. Bowker Co., 1958.

Publisher's Weekly. 1872-. New York: R. R. Bowker Co., 1965.

Roorback, O. A. *Bibliotheca Americana*. reprint. 4 vols. New York: Peter Smith Co., 1939.

Shores, Louis. *Basic Reference Sources*. Chicago: American Library Association, 1939.

Subject Guide to Books in Print. An Index to the *Publishers Trade List Annual*. New York: R. R. Bowker Co., 1957.

Very few texts are available which deal with paleography or handwriting as it applies to genealogy. However, the following books deal with the subject to some degree:

Kirkham, E. Kay. *How to Read the Handwriting and Records of Early America*. 2nd ed. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1964.

Gardner, David E. and Smith, Frank. *Genealogical Research in England and Wales*. vol. 3. Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft Inc., 1964.

Valentine, John F. (ed.) *Handbook for Genealogical Correspondence*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft Inc., 1963.

Reference Works on Secondary Genealogical Sources. Thousands of genealogies and family histories have been published which are of great value to the genealogist, and hundreds of guides, dictionaries, indexes, lists, and bibliographic collections are extant to help the researcher. The following list represents selected reference works in this area:

Biographies, Genealogies, Histories, Pedigrees, etc.

American and English Genealogies in the Library of Congress. Washington: U. S. Government Printing Office, 1919.

Biography Index. A Cumulative Index to Biographical Material in Books and Magazines, 1946-. New York: H. W. Wilson, 1964.

Bridger, Charles. *An Index to Printed Pedigrees contained in County and Local Histories, the Herald's Visitations, and the more important Genealogical Collections*. London: J. R. Smith, 1867.

Burke's Extinct and Dormant Baronetcies. 2nd ed. Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing Co., 1964.

A Catalogue of Books Represented by Library of Congress Printed Cards. New York: Pageant Books Inc., 1958.

Chamber's Biographical Dictionary. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1956.

Complete Peerage by G. E. C. 13 vols. London: The St. Catherine Press, Ltd., 1910.

- Dictionary of National Biography*. 63 vols. London: Oxford University Press, (work is to 1950).
- Dictionary of Welsh Biography*. London: B. H. Blackwell, Ltd., 1959.
- Farmer, John. *A Genealogical Register of the First Settlers of New England*. Lancaster, Mass.: Carter, Andrews, 1829.
- Johnson, Allen (ed.) *Dictionary of American Biography*. 20 vols. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1928-1836, 1936-1940.
- Marquis, Albert Nelson (ed.) *Who's Who in America*. Chicago: A. N. Marquis Co., 1899-.
- Marshall, G. W. *The Genealogist's Guide*. Guildford, England: 1908.
- Munsell, Joel, *Index to American Genealogies*. Albany, New York: Joel Munsell's Sons, 1895 and supplements.
- National Cyclopaedia of American Biography*. New York: James T. White Co., 1898.
- Rider, Fremont. *American Genealogical-Biographical Index*. Middleton, Connecticut: The Godfrey Memorial Library, 1952 (2 series).
- Savage, James. *Genealogical Dictionary of First Settlers of New England*. 4 vols. Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing Co., 1965.
- Smith, George. *The Dictionary of National Biography*, 22 vols. London: The Oxford University Press, 1901-1950.
- Virkus, Frederick A. (ed.) *The Abridged Compendium of American Genealogy*. Chicago: A. N. Marquis and Co., 1925.
- Webster's Biographical Dictionary*. Springfield, 1945.
- Who's Who*. London: Adam and Charles Black, 1897-.
- Witmore, J. B. *A Genealogical Guide*. London: Harleian Society., 1947.

Genealogical periodicals (including newspapers) are a great source of genealogical information and there are sev-

eral guides and directories to such publications. The following list represents some of the more important in British and North American research:

Ayer, N. W. and Sons. *Directory of Newspapers Published in the United States and Canada*. 1880-.

Brigham, Clarence Saunders. *History and Bibliography of American Newspapers, 1690-1820*. Worcester, Mass.: American Antiquarian Society, 1947.

A Checklist of Foreign Newspapers in the Library of Congress. Washington: U. S. Government Printing Office, 1929.

Cappen, Lester J. *American Genealogical Periodicals: A Bibliography with a Chronological Finding List*. New York: New York Public Library, 1964.

Gregory, Winifred (ed.) *American Newspapers, A Union List 1821-1936*. New York: H. W. Wilson Co., 1937.

Jacobus, Donald Lines. *Index to Genealogical Periodicals*. Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing Co., 1963. (reprint of an index published 1932.)

_____, *Union List of Serials in Libraries of the United States and Canada*. 2nd ed. New York: H. W. Wilson Co., 1943.

The Newspaper Press Directory and Advertisers' Guide. London: Benn Brothers Ltd., 1949.

Ulrich, Carolyn F. *Periodicals Directory*. 10th ed. New York: R. R. Bowker Co., 1963.

Reference Works on Primary Genealogical Sources. Several good references are extant which deal with vital, church, cemetery, census and other records so important to the genealogist. The following bibliographic list pertains to "vital records" in Britain and North America:

Abstract of Arrangements Respecting Registration of Births, Marriages, and Deaths in the United Kingdom and Commonwealth. London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office, 1964.

Historical Records Survey Projects, Works Project Admin-

- istration. *Guides to Public and Vital Records*. (See respective jurisdiction for specific information).
- Mandell, Irving. *Law of Marriage and Divorce Simplified*. 2nd ed. New York: Oceana Publications, 1951.
- Official List (of Superintendent Registrars)*. London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office, annual.
- Stevenson, Noel C. *Search and Research*. rev. ed. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1959.
- United States Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Public Health Service. *Where to Write for Birth and Death Records, United States and Outlying Areas*. Public Health Service Publication 630A-1. rev. January 1964. Washington: U. S. Government Printing Office.
- Ibid.*, *Where to Write for Marriage Records*. (630 B)
- Ibid.*, *Where to Write for Divorce Records*. (630 C)

Reference works pertaining to church records are not too profuse for the British and North American genealogist, but the following books do give some direction in that area:

- Burke, Arthur Meredith. *Key to the Ancient Parish Registers of England and Wales*. Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing Co., 1962.
- Crockford's Clerical Directory*. London: Oxford University Press, 1962.
- Henshaw, William Wade. *Encyclopedia of American Quaker Genealogy*.
- Historical Records Survey Projects, Works Progress Administration. *Inventories of Municipal, County, State, and Church Archives in the United States*. (See respective jurisdiction for specific information).
- Jensen, Andrew. *Encyclopedic History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret News Press, 1941.
- Kirkham, E. Kay. *A Survey of American Church Records*. 2 vols. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Company, 1959.

1831 Parish Register Abstract. London: H. M. Stationery Office, 1833.

Tate, W. E. *The Parish Chest.* Cambridge, England: 1946.

Several good references are available which relate to census records in Britain and North America and the following works give guidance in that field.

Boyd, Anne Morris. *United States Government Publications.* New York: H. W. Wilson Co., 1949.

Colket, Merdith B. Jr. and Bridgers, Frank E. *Guide to Genealogical Records in the National Archives.* Washington: The National Archives, 1964.

Index of Place Names, 1961 Census (of England). London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

Index to Places, 1851 Census (of England). Salt Lake: Genealogical Society, 1966.

Kirkham, E. Kay. *A Survey of American Census Schedules.* Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1959.

The National Archives. *Federal Population Censuses 1840-1880: A Price List of Microfilm Copies of Original Schedules.* Washington: The National Archives, 1955.

The National Archives. *Special Lists No. 8 Population Schedules, 1800-1870,* 1951.

Population Tables of 1851 Census (of England). London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office, 1852.

U. S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of the Census. *State Census Documents.* Washington: U. S. Government Printing Office, 1948 (C3-2: S 2/7/780-948).

Probate records are among the most important genealogical sources, but apart from regular genealogical texts which have already been listed under "methodology," few reference works demonstrate their application to genealogy. However, the following list represents a few publications of special interest:

Camp, Anthony J. *Wills and Their Whereabouts.* rev. work by

B. G. Bouwens. Canterbury, England: Phillemore and Co., 1963.

Rood, John Remain. *A Treatise on the Law of Wills*. Chicago: Callaghan and Co., 1926.

Land records and court records (other than probate) can prove revealing in a genealogical vein and the following references give guidance to their use:

Denman, D. R. *Origins of Ownership*. A Brief History of Land Ownership and Tenure in England from Earliest Times to the Modern Era. London: Ruskin House. George Allen and Unwin Ltd., 1958.

Chandler, Alfred N. *Land Title Origins*. New York: Robert Schalkenback Foundation, 1945.

Kirkham, E. Kay. *The Land Records of America and Their Genealogical Value*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Company, 1964.

Pound, Roscoe. *Organization of Courts*. Boston: Little, Brown and Co., 1940.

The following references give guidance to military records as a genealogical tool:

Heitman, F. B. *Historical Register and Dictionary of the United States Army 1789-1903*.

Kirkham, E. Kay. *Some of the Military Records of America before 1900*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1964.

Pensioners listed in the 1840 U. S. Census.

Revolutionary War Pension and Bounty Land Warrant Application Files Index. 3 vols. Supplement to the *National Genealogical Society Quarterly Magazine*, vols. 26, 40, 44, 50. Washington: The National Genealogical Society, 1948-1963.

Perhaps the most interesting reference works to the genealogist are those which apply to emigration and immigration. The following give valuable information on passenger lists, shippings lists and other items of interest.

- Banks, Charles Edward. *English Ancestry and Homes of the Pilgrim Fathers*. Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing Co., 1962.
- _____. *Topographical Dictionary of 2885 English Emigrants to New England*. Baltimore: Southern Book Co., 1957.
- _____. *Planters of the Commonwealth*. Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing Co., 1961.
- _____. *The Winthrop Fleet of 1630*. Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing Co., 1961.
- Colket, Meredith B. Jr. and Bridgers, Frank E. *Guide to Genealogical Records in the National Archives*. Washington: The N. A., 1964.
- Flourney, Richard W. (ed.) *A Collection of Nationality Laws of Various Countries*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1929.
- Gettys, Luella. *The Law of Citizenship in the United States*. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press, 1934.
- Hotten, John Camden. *The Original List of Persons of Quality*. Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing Co., 1962.
- Kansas, Sidney. *Citizenship of the United States of America*. New York: Washington Publishing Co., 1936.
- Silving, Helen. *Immigration Laws of the United States*. New York: Oceana Publications, 1948.

It is recognized that the above bibliographic lists are somewhat restricted and apply mainly to Britain and North America. It is intended that references applicable to specific states or regions will be listed in future publications.

¹Knight, *op. cit.*, p. 3.

²*Ibid.*, p. 35.

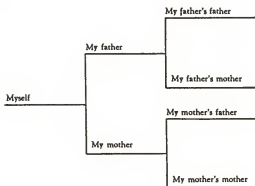
Chapter 7

CHARTS, FORMS, AND NOTEKEEPING

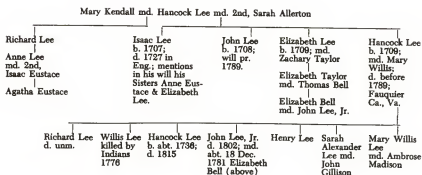
The *pedigree chart* and the *family group record* are important research tools used by the genealogist to show genealogical facts pertaining to ancestors and relatives. The two forms complement each other and are used in gathering, classifying and presenting genealogical information.

The Pedigree Chart. Through the *pedigree chart* the researcher can view ancestral information at a glance and can evaluate such data for its relative worth in the overall research program. He can better understand and comprehend the interrelationship of information and can more easily define research objectives through its use. It may also be used as a convenient transfer medium to transmit genealogical facts from one person to another. The brief but illustrative way that names, dates, places and kinship are shown impresses one with their value in research.

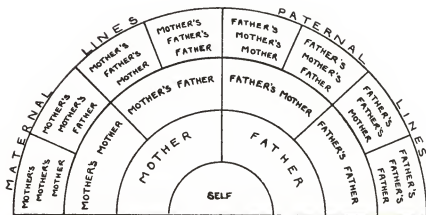
The following illustrations show some of the more popular type pedigree charts which are in significant use with genealogists:



Example of Ascent Pedigree Chart



Example of Descent Pedigree Chart



Example of Wheel Pedigree Chart

PEDIGREE CHART

DATE _____

NAME OF PERSON SUBMITTING CHART _____

STREET ADDRESS _____

CITY _____ STATE _____

NO. 1 ON THIS CHART IS _____
THE SAME PERSON AS NO. _____

ON CHART NO. _____

CHART NO. _____

1. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

2. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

3. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

4. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

5. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

6. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

7. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

8. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

9. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

10. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

11. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

12. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

13. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

14. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

15. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

16. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

17. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

18. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

19. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

20. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

21. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

22. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

23. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

24. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

25. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

26. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

27. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

28. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

29. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

30. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

31. BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

NAME OF SPOUSE OR WIFE _____

GIVE NAME NAME OF SPOUSE OR WIFE
BORN _____ WHEN MARRIED _____
WHERE _____ DIED _____
WHERE _____

Example of Five Generation Outline Pedigree Chart

Just as there are different styles and forms, so also are there different methods of entering genealogical facts on the pedigree and in numbering the charts. The placement of the surname first, rather than in the order spoken, or the abbreviation of a place name in a special manner has no effect on the value of the chart as a research tool. The individual interested in understanding current recording methods and procedures of the LDS Genealogical Society is referred to the *Genealogical Instruction Manual*, 1965 edition with supplements.¹ We would encourage members of the Church and those who utilize the LDS Genealogical Society's facilities to adhere to their rules and standards.

Inasmuch as the beginning student will be faced with a decision in *numbering his pedigree charts* and also in *arranging family group records*, some of the more popular methods are presented below. It is recommended that each system be first reviewed and that selection be based upon personal needs and desires. Experimentation with each system might prove advantageous before final selection is made.

Numbering and Lettering Systems. Numbering or lettering systems fall into two basic categories: "predetermined" or "random." Numbers, letters, or combinations of the two might be utilized in either system, and countless combinations are possible. Some of the more popular combinations are explained and illustrated below; but it should be kept in mind that there are many others, and the researcher should experiment with several before he uses many charts. There are advantages and disadvantages with each system. We will consider first the predetermined number or letter system.

The five-generation chart is so designed that each chart is numbered and each individual on each chart is assigned a number from 1 to 31. The first person listed is number 1, his or her father is listed as number 2 and the mother is listed as number 3, and so on. The father's number is double that of the child and the mother's number is double that of the child plus one. On this type chart the father of each child carries an even number and the mother carries

an odd number. Geometric progression is evident as each generation is twice the preceding, or doubles in number each generation.

With the five-generation ascent pedigree chart the number of the chart becomes the important thing as the numbers assigned individuals are not increased beyond the fifth generation. Under this system, the first chart is assigned number 1 and charts extending each ancestral line in sequence are assigned numbers 2 through 17. The chart extending information from chart number 2 is assigned number 18, as all previous numbers have been used; and so on. Examples of this system and of the pre-determined letter system are shown in the accompanying illustrations.

Other combinations of the predetermined system could be imagined, including a combination of the number and letter systems.

Some advantages and disadvantages are immediately seen in such systems, as well as within the various combinations that have been shown. One must reserve the pre-determined number for each space and cannot use that number on any other chart. In situations where an intermarriage has taken place and where the same person appears twice on the same chart, a problem arises. In this case it is best simply to cross-reference the duplication and only carry one set forward. When a particular line does not extend beyond the first chart, one must remember to leave the appropriate numbers in case that line is extended at a later date.

Within the combinations shown, it is evident that when one begins extending information on charts 63, 64, and 65, etc., he gets extremely large numbers. It may be that the highest numbered charts are the first to extend, and the small digit charts are never used. Very few people are able to extend a particular line over three or four pedigree charts, though there are exceptions when one determines that he descends from royalty or nobility. It is true that one might have many more than three or four pedigree charts, but they are extensions of various lines and not one

CHART NO. <u>1</u>		CHART NO. <u>2</u>		CHART NO. <u>3</u>	
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>2</u>	16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>18</u>	16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>34</u>
17	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>3</u>	17		17	
18	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>4</u>				CHART <u>35</u>
19	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>5</u>				CHART <u>36</u>
20	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>6</u>				CHART <u>37</u>
21	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>7</u>				CHART <u>38</u>
22	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>8</u>				CHART <u>39</u>
23	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>9</u>				CHART <u>40</u>
24	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>10</u>				CHART <u>41</u>
25	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>11</u>				CHART <u>42</u>
26	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>12</u>				CHART <u>43</u>
27	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>13</u>				CHART <u>44</u>
28	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>14</u>				CHART <u>45</u>
29	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>15</u>				CHART <u>46</u>
30	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>16</u>				CHART <u>47</u>
31	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>17</u>				CHART <u>48</u>
					CHART <u>49</u>

Pedigree Charts showing Predetermined Number System

CHART NO. <u>1</u>		CHART NO. <u>B</u>		CHART NO. <u>BF</u>	
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>A</u>	16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>BA</u>	16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>BFA</u>
17	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>B</u>	17	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>BB</u>	17	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>BFB</u>
18	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>C</u>		CHART <u>BC</u>		CHART <u>BFC</u>
19	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>D</u>		CHART <u>BD</u>		CHART <u>BFD</u>
20	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>E</u>		CHART <u>BE</u>		CHART <u>BFE</u>
21	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>F</u>		CHART <u>BF</u>		CHART <u>BFF</u>
22	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>G</u>		CHART <u>BG</u>		CHART <u>BFG</u>
23	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>H</u>		CHART <u>BH</u>		CHART <u>BFH</u>
24	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>I</u>		CHART <u>BI</u>		CHART <u>BFI</u>
25	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>J</u>		CHART <u>BJ</u>		CHART <u>BFJ</u>
26	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>K</u>		CHART <u>BK</u>		CHART <u>BFK</u>
27	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>L</u>		CHART <u>BL</u>		CHART <u>BFL</u>
28	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>M</u>		CHART <u>BM</u>		CHART <u>BFM</u>
29	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>N</u>		CHART <u>BN</u>		CHART <u>BFN</u>
30	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>O</u>		CHART <u>BO</u>		CHART <u>BFO</u>
31	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>P</u>		CHART <u>BP</u>		CHART <u>BFP</u>

Pedigree Charts showing Predetermined Letter System

CHART NO. <u>3</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		

CHART NO. <u>2</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		

CHART NO. <u>1</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
18	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
19	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>2</u>	
20	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
21	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
22	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>5</u>	
23	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
24	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
25	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
26	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
27	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
28	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
29	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
30	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
31	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	

CHART NO. <u>2</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		

CHART NO. <u>3</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		

CHART NO. <u>4</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		

CHART NO. <u>6</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		

CHART NO. <u>7</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		

CHART NO. <u>8</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		

CHART NO. <u>9</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		

CHART NO. <u>10</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		

CHART NO. <u>C</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		
CHART NO. <u>B</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		
CHART NO. <u>A</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		
18	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
19	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>B</u>	
20	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
21	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
22	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART <u>E</u>	
23	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
24	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
25	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
26	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
27	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
28	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
29	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
30	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
31	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	

CHART NO. <u>D</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		
CHART NO. <u>F</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		
CHART NO. <u>G</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		
CHART NO. <u>H</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		
CHART NO. <u>I</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		
CHART NO. <u>J</u>		CHART
16	ABOVE NAME CONTINUED ON CHART	
17		

Pedigree Charts showing Random Letter System

single line extended over four pedigree charts. In any of the systems mentioned, there are limitations when a line extends to any degree.

One of the main advantages of this system is that each line and its extensions from chart number 1 appear in their respective order. That is, extensions on chart number 2 appear before those of chart number 3, etc.

Many genealogists find desirable either the random system or a combination of the random and the predetermined system desirable. In the random system, the next chart to extend receives the next number or letter in sequence, and there is certainly some advantage in not assigning a chart number unless the line definitely extends onto another chart. Numbers, letters, or combinations might also be used in this system.

Undoubtedly some readers will be aware of combinations that are not shown here, these being but a few of the more popular versions. The authors are aware of complex decimal systems that work, just as they are aware of complex combinations of letters in surnames combined with one of the systems mentioned. The individual is free to experiment and use the system that best suits his needs and desires.

The Family Group Record. The family group record is equally important with the pedigree chart in the orderly gathering, analyzing, evaluating and filing of genealogical information. It is usually more detailed in form, giving identification information and documentation for each family unit. Most family group records call for information on each individual belonging to that respective unit, and this includes facts on the father, the mother and each child. The family group record is a very practical and convenient form to show the genealogical status of a particular family unit.

Some researchers use family group records as notekeeping devices, recording the genealogical facts in family group form as they are gleaned from the records searched. Some follow a practice of making a separate record for each gene-

alogical fact located as it applies to a particular individual. In some areas, this may be a good practice, but in others it may be a considerable waste of time and paper. Each person is entitled to his own opinion as to what is desirable. Some genealogists make abstracts on the back of family group records and transfer the pertinent facts to the front of the form as they apply to a particular individual. We find no fault in this nor with many of the other variations used in applying the family group record to research.

In the past, genealogists have often been concerned only with direct pedigree connections and have not concerned themselves with family groups. In LDS theology the family is of prime concern and the family group record has been quite popular. However, the family group record is becoming more important with other genealogists and is also becoming a research tool just as the pedigree chart.

There are many different styles of family group forms available on the market, and the researcher is encouraged to use that style which best suits his taste. The LDS Genealogical Society has used and designed many different styles over the years. They are currently using a family group record with special ordinance and identity columns. This form might prove very desirable for any individual's work, or the so-called "short-form" style may prove sufficient. These forms are reproduced in the accompanying illustrations.

The arrangement and filing of family group records does not present nearly the problem that numbering pedigree charts does, though some persons tend to make their arrangement systems quite complex.

The pedigree chart shows the direct ancestors of a particular individual, and the genealogist's objective is really a family group record for each union shown on the pedigree. In some instances the researcher wants more than this, including records for aunts and uncles and their descendants. However, his prime objective is a family group record, complete and accurate, for each union on his pedigree.

It is recommended that family group records be ar-

HUSBAND

Birth date _____ Place _____
 Christening date _____ Place _____
 Death date _____ Place _____
 Burial date _____ Place _____
 Husband's father _____
 Marriage date (Husb.) _____
 Other Wives of Husband _____
 (If any, list in order)

WIFE

Birth date _____ Place _____
 Christening date _____ Place _____
 Death date _____ Place _____
 Burial date _____ Place _____
 Wife's father _____
 Other Husbands of Wife _____
 (If any, list in order)

CHILDREN (One names in full in order of birth)	WHEN BORN			WHERE BORN			State or Country	DIED			* MARRIED (First Husband or Wife) * (1) additional marriages with dates on reverse side of sheet
	Day	Mo.	Yr.	Town	County			Day	Mo.	Yr.	Date To
1											Date To
2											Date To
3											Date To
4											Date To
5											Date To
6											Date To
7											Date To
8											Date To
9											Date To
10											Date To
11											Date To
12											Date To

ranged or filed in an alphabetical and chronological sequence according to the name and date of birth of the husband. Some genealogists file their records according to generations, but this becomes quite awkward and cumbersome as a large quantity of material is gathered.

Notekeeping in Genealogical Research. There are as many notekeeping systems as there are researchers, and sooner or later each genealogist finds that he must have some system for the documentation and preservation of research findings or he becomes confused and discouraged. Without a system, the genealogist may overlook important facts and may fail to comprehend information of special significance to the problem. As more people engage in research and as new researchers take up work previously initiated by others, there is a constant need to avoid duplication and to be able properly to document research findings. An orderly system of taking and preserving research notes becomes imperative.

Research is a continuing process, and as one must often present evidence from several sources over extended periods of search, an effective system is necessary in recording that information. The scientist records his observations and experimentations in careful detail and with strict accuracy. He then carefully analyzes his findings and evaluates the evidence before reaching his conclusions. A scientific genealogist can do no less than this.

As already stated, the basic unit of interest to the genealogist is the properly identified family unit. He needs evidence to support his conclusions. The family group can well be the nucleus of a good notekeeping system.

A good notekeeping system should include facts on the sources which have been searched in each jurisdiction and should disclose what information was located (or not located) in those sources. The researcher should be able to show what he has done and when he did it and should also be able to tell to which individual(s) that information might apply. A notekeeping system which will allow a disinterested person to determine the above facts is an adequate system. As genealogical research is a continuing process it

is evident that one must be able to refer to previous searches with a minimum amount of frustration. Those who follow no system in extracting and gaining information often become discouraged and frustrated after they have been in the work for a time because they must look at everything they have done each time they want to evaluate a problem or define an objective. Research objectives suggest a method of notekeeping which will satisfy all requirements.

In defining a research objective, or in determining the research steps which should be taken, one must consider (1) the surnames of interest, (2) the time period and jurisdictions of interest and (3) the genealogical sources which are extant for the time period and jurisdictions of interest.

The following system has been used successfully by some of the American researchers at the LDS Genealogical Society in Salt Lake City and by several genealogical students at Brigham Young University. This information perhaps will assist the reader in setting up an adequate notekeeping system which facilitates efficient searching and enables others to benefit from his findings.

A. Maintain a good pedigree of your ancestral lines showing known genealogical facts. This should be an expanding record with information being added and in some instances negated from time to time.

B. Maintain a family group record for each union on your pedigree, showing the known genealogical ordinance fact for each individual in each family unit.

This collection should represent the "status" of genealogical and ordinance work pertaining to one's ancestry and may well become a voluminous collection. After a time the entire collection would be too cumbersome to use in applied research and special steps such as the following should be taken in conducting library or field research.

1. Initiate a work pedigree chart showing a selected line or two of interest, and include all known genealogical facts. The standard five-generation pink pedigree charts are handy for this work project.

2. Initiate work family group sheets on those families of special concern, and show all known genealogical and ordinance facts pertaining to them.

Experience has shown that a legal size (8½" x 14") folder is handy to place such work sheets in and is convenient to use in a library or in field research. Materials gathered which apply to the problem(s) outlined on the pedigree and family group sheets may also be included in the folder.

3. Initiate a calendar of correspondence and index letters sent or received which apply to the lines of interest.

The accompanying calendar of correspondence illustrates how a researcher might keep track of research findings through correspondence.

CALENDAR OF CORRESPONDENCE		
NAME OF RESEARCHER: <u>Jimmy B. Parker</u>		
SURNAMES OF INTEREST: <u>Long, Spencer, Paulk</u>		
DATE	ADDRESSEE/ADDRESSOR & PURPOSE	REPLY
12 July 1965		
2 July 1965	Mrs. C. Main, Cleveland, Ohio (Athens Co. search)	25 July
4 July 1965	State of Idaho (death record of Isaac Long)	12 July 65
12 July 1965 Bannock Co. Idaho (probate of Isaac Long)		
12 July 1965 Alvin W. Long, Washington (family rec of Isaac)		
25 July		

Carbon copies of all letters written should be kept and a correspondence file maintained. Letters should be filed alphabetically by the addressee or the addressor, and genealogical facts obtained through correspondence should be

"lifted" from the letters and added to the pedigree and family group records to which the facts pertain. All correspondence pertaining to the project should be listed on the calendar(s). Genealogical facts contained in the letters received are recorded on the pedigree and family groups to which they apply. Certificates, photos and extracts, etc., which are obtained through correspondence may be filed in the work folder or some other desirable place and the facts contained on them should be placed on the pedigree and family groups to which the information applies.

4. Initiate calendars of search for each jurisdiction of interest, and list on them bibliographical information for sources searched or to be searched. Use a separate calendar(s) for each jurisdiction.

Experience has shown that it is convenient to initiate separate calendars for (1) family and home sources, (2) special LDS sources (the Temple Records Index Bureau and Church Records Archives Collections) (3) printed secondary sources (biographies, genealogies, family histories, etc.) and (4) each jurisdiction of interest to the problem (town, county, state or their counterparts). Do not initiate a calendar until you actually make a search in that jurisdiction.

The accompanying calendars of search indicate how a researcher might index research findings.

CALENDAR OF SEARCH

NAME OF RESEARCHER: Jimmy B. Parker _____

JURISDICTION OF INTEREST: Family and Home _____

SURNAMES OF INTEREST: Long, Spencer, Paulk _____

DESCRIPTION OF SOURCE	DATE SEARCHED	EXTRACT NUMBER
Alvin Long family record	1 June 1964	A1
Maude B. Long book of remembrance	1 Aug 1964	A2
Personal interview with G. W. Long	3 Aug 1964	A3
Old Temple Ordinance Book of Alvin Long	9 Sep 1964	A4

CALENDAR OF SEARCH

NAME OF RESEARCHER: Jimmy B. Parker _____

JURISDICTION OF INTEREST: Special LDS _____

SURNAMES OF INTEREST: Long, Spencer, Paulk _____

DESCRIPTION OF SOURCE	DATE SEARCHED	EXTRACT NUMBER
Temple Records Index Bureau		
Long names	8 Sep 1964	B1
Spencer names	8 Sep 1964	Nil
Paulk names	8 Sep 1964	B2
Church Records Archives		

CALENDAR OF SEARCH

NAME OF RESEARCHER: Jimmy B. Parker _____

JURISDICTION OF INTEREST: Printed Secondary Sources _____

SURNAMES OF INTEREST: Long, Spencer, Paulk _____

DESCRIPTION OF SOURCE	DATE SEARCHED	EXTRACT NUMBER
Spencers of New England by A.W.Spencer, 1889	1 Oct 1964	Nil
Spencer Family in America by S. Long, 1925	1 Oct 1964	C1
Paulk Genealogy by Sara Paulk, 1963	2 Oct 1964	C2
Paulk Family of the South by A. Paulk, 1945	3 Oct 1964	Nil

CALENDAR OF SEARCH

NAME OF RESEARCHER: Jimmy B. Parker _____

JURISDICTION OF INTEREST: Athens County, Ohio _____

SURNAMEs OF INTEREST: Long, Spencer, Paulk _____

DESCRIPTION OF SOURCE	DATE SEARCHED	EXTRACT NUMBER
1850 Census (5008 F Ohio 4 Pt 1)	2 Nov 1964	D1
1860 Census (5007 F Ohio 3 Pt 2)	2 Nov 1964	D2
1870 Census (38066 F Ohio 40 Pt 2)	3 Nov 1964	Nil
History of Athens Co by C.M. Walker, 1868	3 Nov 1964	D3
Grantor Index to Deeds (1839-1890)	4 Nov 1964	D4

CALENDAR OF SEARCH

NAME OF RESEARCHER: Jimmy B. Parker _____

JURISDICTION OF INTEREST: United States _____

SURNAMEs OF INTEREST: Long, Spencer, Paulk _____

DESCRIPTION OF SOURCE	DATE SEARCHED	EXTRACT NUMBER
Revolutionary War Pension Files Index	5 Nov 1964	Nil
Civil War Index (North)	5 Nov 1964	E1
Consolidated Index to Confederate Veterans	5 Nov 1964	E2

5. Maintain a manuscript note file of searches and findings.

The efficient genealogist will keep notes on his extracts, abstracts, and related work so that he might evaluate his findings and so that others might check his conclusions. The calendars of search as shown above are merely an index to what has been done, and the actual findings should be noted in some understandable fashion. Some researchers make all extracts and list all findings right on work family group wheels, while others list their findings in manuscript note form and then lift the facts at a later time and place them on the family group records and pedigree charts.

The work folder can also be a repository for the manuscript notes, or a special looseleaf notebook might be employed to hold calendars and notes. Experience has shown that one should use paper of a uniform size both for the calendars and for notes. The paper and forms should be loose so they might better be analyzed. In most instances it is well to write on only one side of the paper or form when making extracts. This will allow the researcher to evaluate located facts without confusion. Make notes in ink for permanency and readability whenever possible.

Sometimes it might be advisable to arrange extracts and abstracts by record group, such as census, land, probate, etc.; or one might desire to arrange material by the surname to which it applies. Each researcher will have some different desire, and researchers working in different countries may differ considerably in their methods of extracting and recording from the originals.

¹*The Genealogical Instruction Manual*, op. cit.

Part III

THE SURVEY PHASE

Chapter 8

THE GENERAL SURVEY

In scientific genealogical research it is wise to conduct a survey to determine the extent of work which has already been completed before embarking on intensive research.

Many genealogists fail to realize the full significance of the survey and consequently waste much time and money in their efforts. One Utah resident spent a large amount of time and money on a trip to England to gather his genealogy, only to return and find the same information on file in the Genealogical Society at Salt Lake City, Utah. Of course there were some aesthetic values which came from the trip to Europe but time and money were wasted from a genealogical standpoint.

Many persons begin research with an idea that the answers to a particular problem are all nicely written out and beautifully recorded and are merely awaiting one's perusal. This is not the case, and as in other fields of investigation, it is a matter of gaining one fact here and another fact there and then, through careful evaluation and analysis determining the truth. The survey effort can fill a very important place in successful research if done properly.

There are those who never get out of the "survey" phase but spend all of their time copying the work of others and often adding error to an already confused problem. A proper balance between survey work and research effort is needed. Speaking in this vein, Jacobus said:

When I enter a genealogical room and see the many workers industriously copying from printed records, I have the feeling almost of dismay, realizing that each one is perhaps adding to the already hopeless tangle of twisted pedigrees. Printed material nevertheless

has its uses, and should not be neglected, even by those professionals who are able to consult the original archives. . . .¹

As suggested by Mr. Jacobus, there is a place for printed secondary materials, and this is in the survey phase of research. There is a happy medium between reliance only upon the original sources and only upon the printed secondary sources. The successful genealogist should follow a middle road.

The survey is designed to determine the extent of previous work and should be approached that way. A systematic approach can be accomplished by searching (1) family and home sources, (2) special collections of the LDS Genealogical Society, and (3) special printed secondary sources.

The researcher is not attempting to establish the facts beyond reasonable doubt in the survey, but is merely gathering data from the several sources available to visualize what has already been done on a particular genealogical problem. He should refrain from disputation and argument pertaining to the correctness of the facts but should gather any and all information which in any way seems pertinent to his problem. He should give respect and credit to those who provide him with such data, though realizing that some of the information may be in error. A more thorough analysis and evaluation of the facts can be made at a later time, for research is a never-ending process and one is never really finished with his genealogy. It is like an "open end account"; we are continually adding to and taking from it as the need arises.

Family and Home Sources. The genealogist who is beginning a new research problem can gain basic information from oral and transcribed testimony within the family and home and its environs. He can contact immediate and distant relatives to get their genealogical knowledge and such information on family tradition as they might have. He might also contact old-timers and associates who may give helpful information. Of course, this isn't possible on early pedigree problems where living witnesses have long since gone. Yet, it is surprising what genealogical facts have

been handed down and are a matter of knowledge among living persons. This falls in the realm of family tradition and the following article will help to show its place in genealogical research.

TRADITION AND FAMILY HISTORY²

Tradition is a chronic deceiver, and those who put faith in it are self-deceivers. This is not to say that tradition is invariably false. Sometimes a modicum of fact lies almost hidden at its base. The probability of its falsehood increases in geometric ratio as the lineage claimed increases in grandeur.

Every Rogers family has a tradition of descent from John Rogers the Martyr; every Adams family links itself traditionally with the Braintree stem which produced two presidents. There is nothing surprising in this. It is human nature to be vain, and belief in the importance of one's family is merely an extension of personal vanity. We all prefer to hide the skeleton in the closet, and to display the heraldic device which we would fain believe our knightly ancestors sanctified with their blood.

To show how quickly and easily a tradition emerges out of nothing, let us invent a story. During the presidency of the first Adams, a humble Adams family is living in a frontier settlement. The Adams boy is asked by another whether he is related to the great man. The boy is intrigued; if a kinship can be claimed, he will be able to hold his own against the Sheriff's son when boasts of parental importance are made. So he takes the question to old "Granter" Adams, as the most likely to know. The aged man, his own days of activity over, becomes animated when thus appealed to as an authority on the family history. Well, now, he doesn't rightly know, but when he was living as a young blade back in New England, he once met a man named Adams in a tavern, and come to talk things over, they were related somehow, and he had heard it said as how this man he was talking with was connected with the Braintree Adamses. Come to think of it, there probably was a connection way back. Yes, sir, he wouldn't be surprised if there was.

The elated youngster next day, when exchanging boasts with the Sheriff's son, proudly announces that he is related to President Adams. Way back, of course, but it was the same family. His grandfather told him, and he guessed his grandfather knew what he was talking about.

Twenty-five years later, the Adams youngster is a man of affairs, with boys of his own. The Adams myth, from constant retelling in his own boyhood, has become fixed in his mind as an implacable fact, true as gospel. He could not repeat exactly, if asked to do so,

the maundering words of his grandfather, but he was certainly left with a distinct impression that a relationship existed. In all these years, the reality of the claim never has been disproved, probably not even challenged. When he pridefully tells his own boys about the Adams family, he believes he is telling the strict truth. Yes, boys, we belong to the same family as President Adams; I had it straight from my grandfather's own lips.

Thus in a quarter of a century a strong, enduring tradition has completed its miraculous growth. Thus do the tiny seeds of vanity germinate and produce the towering trees of an illustrious Family History.

While our example is entirely fictitious, every experienced genealogist knows of erroneous and thoroughly disproved traditions which must have originated in some such way. Nor are such erroneous traditions restricted to claims of exalted lineage or connections. They may refer merely to the nationality of the immigrant ancestor, or to the original place of residence in this country, or to any other detail of the family history.

Among families whose surnames are of French origin, or are similar to French names, there is likely to be the French Huguenot tradition. Genealogists who realize how many Norman-French names were carried into England with the Conqueror, do well to view such claims with suspicion until proved. Traditions of Welsh origin of early colonial families are seldom verified.

In one family it was understood that an ancestor was French, came over with Lafayette and served under him in the Revolutionary War. But this ancestor's birth and death records were actually found in his father's family Bible, and the ancestry in this country went back to 1644; he did serve in the Revolution, and his son married a woman whose ancestry was originally French. There had been here some mingling of traditions from different sides of the family.

It was supposed in another family that the first known male line ancestor (born 1767) came from Martha's Vineyard. Investigation revealed not a single occurrence of the surname in the vital records of the Vineyard prior to 1850. The ancestry was eventually located elsewhere. But this ancestor married a girl who was born in Martha's Vineyard. Here the tradition was correct except that it had become associated with the wrong ancestral line.

We all recognize the fallibility of tradition when the traditions of some other person's family are questioned. When our own are at stake, it is a different matter. Our grandmother had a marvelous memory, and we know that every word she told us was gospel truth. After all, she was *our* grandmother, and it is asking a great deal to suggest that we give up one detail of her cherished memoirs.

The present writer had a great-uncle who took an interest in the family history, and my mother wrote down his account. He started with his great-grandfather, who was one of three brothers who came over. Actually, he *was* one of three brothers, but they were of the fourth generation in America. Did my great-uncle merely assume that the first ancestor he knew about was the original settler, or did my mother misunderstand him? They both possessed good minds for details, yet this much of error crept into the account.

Just why so many traditions center around three brothers who came over, is a problem that has never been solved. Brothers often did come to America, but there were instances of two brothers, and even of four and five, as well as of three.

The dear old aunt of the writer was born a Wilmot, and firmly believed in the high, even titled, connections of the family. She had, indeed, a detailed account which on slight provocation she could be induced to relate. We were of the same blood as the notorious John Wilmot, Earl of Rochester. Parenthetically, it should be explained that the old lady did not know of Rochester's reputation for profligacy, and the writer never enlightened her. The last descendant of Rochester, according to her story, had died leaving a large property, including an entire square in London. The nearest heir was a maiden lady named Wilmot who had come to this country from England and lived in the same city with my aunt's brother. She died before taking possession of the property. My uncle had met her and discussed the family history with her, and they were agreed that our branch of Wilmots were "next in line."

In vain did I protest that the Earl of Rochester's only son died a minor, and that the title died with him, while the family estates descended to the daughters who carried them by marriage into other families. She merely set her lips in a firm line and said, "Well, I'm not lying about it; I guess I know what I know."

Of course she was not lying. Just how this story originated can only be surmised. Quite likely the Wilmot lady from England was deluded by an "inheritance mania" and imagined much of what she told to my relatives; and it is not impossible that my aunt in part misunderstood or misinterpreted the story.

Again, on the writer's paternal side there was a story of a lost inheritance. My grandfather, early in life, joined an association of Anneke Jans heirs, as he understood that his Doremus grandmother was a descendant. The marriage certificate of his parents was turned over to the association's lawyer, and never recovered, and it was believed that the lawyer "sold out" to the opposing interests. This was the story as it came to me from my grandfather's lips. But so far as my own investigations have gone, I have failed to find a scrap of evidence to prove that my Doremus ancestress descended from

Anneke Jans at all. Perhaps she did, but it is very doubtful, and until and unless record proof is forthcoming, I shall not claim the line.

It is natural for people to feel that a special sanctity inheres in the traditions of their own family. To doubt them is to doubt the veracity of their parents and grandparents. The genealogist should therefore be gentle and tactful when his investigations run counter to the cherished traditions. Those who employ genealogists, on the other hand, should realize that their genealogist gets no pleasure out of destroying their traditions. He is employed to ascertain the truth, and it is his duty to report what the records reveal.

Although few traditions prove to be true in every particular, the genealogist should not, with a superior air, dismiss a tradition as unworthy of consideration. Occasionally a traditional statement is found to be very close to the truth. The majority of them contain some element of truth, however misapplied or encircled with error. Therefore, traditions should be sifted and tested and utilized as clues, but not accepted as true until verified from contemporary documentary sources.

In addition to the oral testimony and family tradition which might be located in family and home sources there are a host of printed or manuscript materials which might be of value to a particular genealogical problem and which have their place in the survey. The following documents have actually been found with the family or in the home:

Books and Manuscripts

- Account books
- Baby books
- Bibles
- Biographies
- Books of remembrance
- Diaries
- Histories
- Journals
- Scrapbooks
- Temple ordinance books

Certificates and Clippings

- Advancement
- Announcements
- Awards
- Baptism

- Birth
- Blessing
- Christening
- Confirmation
- Death
- Divorce
- Engagements
- Graduation
- Marriage
- Memorials
- Obituaries
- Ordination

Land and Estate Records

- Abstracts of title
- Agreements
- Bonds

Contracts	Orders
Deeds	Pension documents
Leases	Rosters
Mortgages	Separation papers
Petitions	
Tax records	Miscellaneous Records
Trust documents	Business records
Wills	Insurance records
Military and Naval Records	Letters
Affidavits	Lodge and fraternity records
Attestations	Naturalization-citizenship papers
Citations	Patriarchal blessings
Depositions	Passports
Discharges	Pictures
Enlistment papers	Receipts and accounts
Induction papers	School records
Muster rolls	

An interesting article on various ways in which family records have been preserved was written by Mrs. William Wallace McPherson, of Chicago, Illinois. This was published in *The American Genealogist* in July of 1934 and reprinted in Noel C. Stevenson's *The Genealogical Reader* in 1958. It is reprinted below.

A FEW ODD WAYS BY WHICH FAMILY RECORDS HAVE BEEN PRESERVED⁴

By MRS. WILLIAM WALLACE MCPHERSON, of Chicago, Ill.

The Family Bible is the usual means by which records have been handed down to succeeding generations, but we have found records in a Hymn Book, the one in question being in possession of Mrs. Franklin M. Miller of Chicago, in which is recorded some of the Thaddeus Kingsley data. Thaddeus Kingsley was born in Connecticut, lived in Becket, Mass., served in the Revolution and was pensioned in Albany County, N. Y.

Diaries of course are a common source of information, but a diary kept by a man making a trip around Cape Horn to San Francisco in the gold rush was more like a ship log. Dr. Morrell of Chicago has such a diary. His grandfather set out from Boston, and his diary gave a full account of wage scales and the high price of potatoes and butter in those times, as well as clues to ancestry. Mrs. Wilbur Halm of Glencoe, Ill., possesses a surveyor's book which

has family records of her ancestors who came from Lancaster County, Pa., to Fleming County, Ky., thence to Greencastle, Ind.

Samplers often preserve family records. We saw a very old one in Smyrna, Dela., of the Evans Family. Miss Leete, an antique dealer of Guilford, Conn., purchased one of the Steele family giving data which solved a problem in genealogy.

Grave records, church records, wills, deeds, court orders, and minutes and chancery proceedings, orphans' court, pension files, and census enumerations, are common means to ancestral knowledge. We found an old Bible Dictionary in Springfield, Tenn., which showed that Rev. Thomas Gunn was born on the Forks of the Nottoway, Va. Rev. Thomas and James Gunn were founders of Methodism in Tennessee.

Family charts compiled by interested members of the family are of great help—if they are correct. We found a family chart in possession of Judge Charles Albert Williams of Chicago which was compiled in 1850 by his great-uncle and which is erroneous, as we proved by church and vital records. It states David Williams was born "Bowling," Conn. David was born Berlin, Conn., but was not son of the father attributed to him by the chart.

An odd family tree of a Seeley family, found in Glens Falls, N. Y., was a water color picture of roses with family records in each rose.

Embroidered pictures were another source of record. Mrs. George Fitch (Abigail Williams) of Ellicottville, N. Y., has one of these embroidered pictures, which shows a woman standing by a gravestone on which is inscribed a record. These pictures generally have a large tree by the grave, and the woman has mitts on her hands. Mrs. Fitch's ancestor was Tamesin Chapman, wife of Israel Perkins of Connecticut. Mrs. Franklin John Stransky of Savanna, Ill., has one which shows the dates of her Revolutionary ancestor's wife's sister, Permelia Nevins of Bedford, N. H.

Account books were another means of keeping records. Mr. Perry Pritchett of Knox County, Ind., has one which gives the record of his Revolutionary ancestor, John Pritchett of North Carolina, who was pensioned. The family some years ago erected a government marker to his memory and unfortunately, instead of consulting his pension papers to secure his true service, obtained a service from the office of the Adjutant General, Washington, D. C., of a Virginia John Pritchard, and in consequence the stone was wrongly inscribed.

Mrs. George Welch Olmsted of Ludlow, Pa., has in her book of ancestry a photostat of the Pendleton record, made in an account book by her ancestor, James Pendleton, born 1778, son of James Pendleton of Weston, Conn. This account book is now in possession of the Misses Martha and Myrtle Pendleton of Scio, N. Y.

Gravestones of course supply good records, and sometimes oddities. One found in Hillsboro, N. H., stated that the stone was erected for a man's mother-in-law and gave the cost thereof.

Old letters are another vast help. Recently we found an old letter in possession of Mrs. Charles Farrar Isola, of Milford, N. H., written by William Heywood and wife Caroline of Rockville, Conn., to his sister Amy, widow of Abiel Wilkins of Mt. Vernon, N. H. Caroline casually mentions her brother Daniel McMillen's death. A search of New Boston, N. H., records revealed that Caroline who married William Heywood was Caroline McMillen, sister of Daniel.

Mrs. William James Tollerton, of Chicago, did not know where her grandfather, William Carroll Gunn of Versailles, Mo., was born. Some old letters in her attic showed correspondence with Robertson County, Tenn., Gunns. By original research they were traced from Tennessee to North Carolina to Virginia. She did not know where her father was born except "near Louisville, Ky." Census records, coupled with deeds and a tavern license, showed him to be born in an Inn now standing at Big Spring, Ky.

We were doing research in Perkinsville, Vt., and were told the deeds were in a vault in a country grocery store. Seeing two old men on the steps of the store, we asked, "Is the recorder of Deeds here?" One turned to the other and said, "They want recorder of Bees. I don't want to get mixed up in it."

Newspaper obituaries help if there is not too much family tradition. The Horsley family have an obituary of their grandmother and because she was a Shrewsbury, it said she was a niece of George Washington. Another family had a James Carroll who, they said, was descended from Charles Carroll the Signer, whereas James Carroll was a poor Methodist of North Carolina and Tennessee, and Charles Carroll a rich Roman Catholic. Someone was descended from Samuel Smith, the Signer from Pennsylvania, and they said Samuel had only one son, who never married. The same person was descended from Peter Miller of Pennsylvania, who proved to be a celibate.

A town history of Oxford, N. Y., states that Ephraim Fitch's grandfather came on the Mayflower. The Ephraim in question was born in 1738 at Norwich, Conn., and generations must have been long indeed if his grandfather landed in 1620. In using traditional statements, and those made in town and county histories, it is necessary to employ discrimination, and to sift the false from the true, particularly with regard to the more remote ancestors.

The following interesting story appeared in the *Denver Post* in 1963 and helps to illustrate the same point.

'Lindholm. March 18, 99'

OLD IRONING BOARD HOLDS DATA OF MYSTERY FAMILY

By Gene Lindberg
Denver Post Staff Writer

On March 18, 1899, Mrs. Augusta Lindholm, then of 3461 W. 32nd Ave., took pencil in hand and recorded the vital statistics of her big family on the back of her ironing board.

The 64-year old mystery of this smooth, tapered plank of basswood has intrigued Marc B. Merriman for more than 20 years. He'd like to clear it up, if anyone still remembers the Lindholms after more than three-score years.

Merriman didn't know them. He doesn't know how the old board, firmly indented by Mrs. L's steady hand, got into his basement at 1304 Olive St.

All he knows, Merriman says, is that the board was there when he bought the house in 1940. Many times he's started to use the lumber or give the board away. But always those carefully written names, ages and birth-months have stayed his hand.

"If any members of that tribe are still alive," Merriman says, "they might like to have that ironing board — and they'd be welcome. All I ask is, don't call me. I'm not home much. It would be better to call The Denver Post."

There's one thing about writing family history on an ironing board. It's permanent, not easily mislaid, handy for reference when needed. That must have been in Mrs. Lindholm's mind when she recorded the names of her husband, Solomon, 57, born in June; herself, Augusta, 41, born in May, and the names and birth months of 11 other Lindholms, as follows:

Sept., Robert L., 26; Jan., Alma, 24; July, Edward, 21; June, Otilia B., 19; July, Lillie E., 13; September, Ella F., 10; Feb., Harry L. 10 years; March, Otto F., 8 years; Dec., Albert, 6 years; March, Walter D., 2 years, and May, Victor M., 6 months.

Below the long list was the line, "Written Mar. 18th, 99."

In two places, the owner signed her name, Mrs. A. Lindholm, 3461 W. 32nd Ave., and below that the figures, "240-9-19-98."

There's a notation that somebody whose name started with M. "went to Texas on 11 of February, 1899." Below that is the word, "Returned" but no date. There are other faint jottings, penciled at an angle, difficult to make out.

Among all the Lindholms listed on the board there may still be at

least one who remembers it. But even Victor J. Lindholm, the 6-month-old baby, is now 64 if he's still alive.

Apparently the old ironing board was left in the basement at 1304 Olive St. by the family of the late Clinton V. Mead, Denver lawyer, who lived there from 1904 until he died April 9, 1930. His widow, Mrs. Nirna Loomis Mead, lived there till she died in 1937, while visiting a daughter, Gladys Mead, in Detroit. Another daughter, Miss Nirna E. Mead, sold the house to Merriman. She had a brother, Bennet L. Mead, living in Baltimore in 1930.

Efforts to reach survivors of the Mead family in Denver have been unsuccessful. Old Denver directories in The Post library do not list the Lindholms, Solomon and Augusta.

The house at 3461 W. 32nd Ave. is still there, but the present tenant, Mrs. Dorothea Fitch, knows nothing about the Lindholms, or how their ironing board got across town to the big, two-story brick house on Olive St.

These two articles help to illustrate what might be found in family and home sources. Information might come forth after the researcher is well into his research problem, for as new localities are determined, new family and home sources become available. Most of the information found this way is highly secondary in nature and its greatest value is in the survey phase of research.

The *Pedigree Referral Service*, as administered by the Genealogical Society of the LDS Church can rightly be suggested as a part of the survey and is particularly applicable to family and home sources, because in reality it is a mechanized introduction to family and home sources. The service is designed to register pedigree information from individuals and organizations through the use of modern electronic equipment.

Through a request program, the computer supplies the names and addresses of all individuals who have registered information on similar lines. Any person may participate in the program, and the key to its success is a willingness to share information. It is really designed to bring persons together who have the same ancestral lines and can be listed as a family and home source for genealogical information. The system is explained in detail in Supplement "B" of the *Genealogical Instruction Manual*, 1965 edition, and

the introduction to that Supplement is reproduced below.

Presently, genealogy and the pursuit of historical facts concerning ancestors is one of the world's most popular pastimes and hobbies, as well as being an activity of religious significance to members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Persons in every corner of the globe are ever-increasingly becoming ancestor conscious. Thousands of hours and dollars are spent annually in the performance of research to locate and identify these ancestors.

Realizing that several generations back many researchers are descended from the same ancestors, the need for cooperation in research is quite obvious. In an effort to stimulate cooperation among individuals in furthering their research, the Genealogical Society has devised the Pedigree Referral Service (PRS).

The goal of the service is to bring together those who have the same lines of ancestry, thereby helping to prevent duplication and promote cooperation among individuals in their research. PRS has two phases — *registration* and *requests for information* (inquiries).

1. *Registration.* Individuals participating in the service should first register with PRS their direct ancestral surnames together with the localities and periods of time involved.

2. *Requests for information.* After registration, participants are then eligible to request searches in the PRS file for the names and addresses of other participants in PRS who have registered similar information.

It is realized that individuals who have extended pedigrees will have many surnames, localities, and periods of time to register. However, participants are encouraged to register their *complete* pedigrees regardless of how extensive the pedigree may be. Cooperation and a willingness to share with others are the keys to success of PRS. If participants will register complete pedigrees with a sincere desire to share, the service will be more useful to all and extremely more valuable to individuals who are just beginning research.

If no result is obtained from a PRS inquiry, this merely indicates that no other persons have yet *registered* the desired information. Other individuals who have *not* registered may be working on the same lines as the participant who receives a negative reply from an inquiry. These other persons may eventually register with PRS, and at that time positive results will become obtainable.

Since new information is continually being registered, periodic inquiries are advisable in order for participants to maintain a current list of names and addresses of persons working on the same lines they are. The current number of entries in the PRS file will appear on each reply to an inquiry. By checking this number periodically, participants can watch the growth of the PRS file.

The growth potential of the PRS file and of the service that can be rendered genealogists everywhere is unlimited. The success of the service will expand continually as more and more people participate. If all genealogical researchers throughout the world will register their pedigrees, completely and properly, PRS will become the greatest boon to genealogical research the world has ever known.

Every LDS priesthood bearer should take the initiative in seeing that the family lines for which he and his family are responsible for research are properly registered with PRS. It will be through the encouragement and support of the priesthood throughout the Church that this service will achieve the purposes for which it is intended in helping the saints obtain family exaltation.

There are two types of registrations — the registrations of *individuals* and those of *family organizations*. Four possible registration situations are involved.

1. *Individuals registering for themselves who are not members of a family organization.* Individual participants who do not belong to a family organization should register their complete pedigrees.
2. *Individuals registering for themselves who are members of one or more family organizations.* Individual participants who belong to one or more family organizations should include in their own individual registrations only the lines that have *not* been registered by the family organization(s).
3. *Individuals registering for family organizations.* Individuals registering for family organizations should register only the lines for which the organization is responsible for research.
4. *Individuals registering for both themselves and for family organizations.* If an individual assigned to register for a family organization desires to register his own pedigree lines that are not under the jurisdiction of the family organization, he may do so. However, *individual registrations and the registrations of family organizations must be kept separate.* In this instance, the individual should prepare separate registration forms.³

Special LDS Sources. In addition to family and home sources, the general survey should include certain collections of the LDS Genealogical Society which are general to the entire field of genealogy. These should include searches in (1) the Temple Records Index Bureau (TIB) and (2) the Church Records Archives collections (CRA). The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints has long been engaged in genealogical activity and has accumulated an impressive collection of genealogical materials. Some of these have

originated within the Church itself and are generally of interest only to those who have LDS connections, but others are very general in nature and are of value to any genealogist regardless of his ancestry. The TIB and the CRA fit this latter category and certainly have their place in the survey, whether the genealogical problem of interest is LDS-connected or not.

At the present time, the *Temple Records Index Bureau collection* represents genealogical and ordinance information on upwards of 31 million persons. The collection is growing at the rate of over one million listings per year, and indications are that it could become one of the greatest reservoirs of genealogical fact in the world. Plans are presently being implemented to make such information as is not confidential more readily available to the public.

Because of the nature of this collection, it should be one of the first sources investigated by a person initiating research. Information has been submitted by thousands of persons, with different ancestral interests, from all parts of the world, and for various time periods. The TIB contains information about living as well as deceased persons which has been filed since 1842. It is primarily an index to endowments, with baptismal information and some early sealing dates included. Miscellaneous sealings of persons which were accomplished outside the temples have also been included. These include sealings completed in the President's Office and in other places between Nauvoo and California. The file does not contain a record of all sealings nor does it contain a record of baptisms for persons who have not been endowed. Information on sealings which are not included in the TIB must be obtained from original temple records, and baptismal information on persons who have not been endowed are to be found in ward, branch and mission records.

The TIB came into being in order to prevent duplication of ordinance work in the various temples of the Church. As early as 1921 a program was initiated to copy the original endowment data from temple records onto 3 x 5-inch index cards, and by 1927 the work was completed. Since

that time endowment information has been cleared through the TIB at the Genealogical Society and a permanent record filed there after ordinance work has been completed. All ordinance work for the deceased must be cleared through the Genealogical Society before the work in the temples is done, but living persons may go directly to the temples for ordinances. Genealogical and ordinance facts are filed in the TIB for the living and the dead after such ordinances are performed.

Information on file is no better than its source, and some data is quite unreliable, but a great amount of the information listed is the result of sound genealogical research or results from personal knowledge of those involved. For those who received their own endowments in life, the data filed represents information given by that person in life and can be of extreme value in clarifying certain genealogical facts. Information pertaining to other persons might have come from a variety of sources. The TIB cards do not contain the source information but do contain cross-reference facts to family group records on file in the CRA. The CRA was not established until 1942, however, while the TIB was in existence as early as 1927; so information in the TIB may not be on file in the CRA. Cards in the TIB do indicate whether the information came from a person in life or whether it was provided by a proxy.

A copy of an endowment card is shown so that the reader might gain an idea of the facts called for.

Utah & Missouri Temple
No. 1442 A sig. 90

Name in full Wright- Joseph
Where born 25 Dec. 1817
Where born Abilene, Yorkshire, Eng.
When born 1838
When died 1838
When married 1838
Where married 1838
Proxy Samuel Harrison, 1838
Signature self.
Date signed 4 Jan. 1857
Place signed 4 Jan. 1857

Endowment Card of Joseph Wright

Cards of different color and style have been used to indicate information on or about a particular individual. White cards indicate a female, buff cards a male, salmon colored cards are on file showing early sealing information, and green or pink slips are filed for males and females whose work is currently in process in one of the temples. Many cards are now being printed by the computer and include names extracted from original parish registers. This program has resulted in the listing of thousands of names from various parishes in one central filing system and is a great finding tool. It is expected that this program will continue and will bring out information from parish registers of England and Scotland as well as from other countries of the world.

Not all cards on file show all the facts called for, but many provide most of that information. A program for correction and addition exists which allows for continual updating of the files.

The filing arrangement is a special adaptation of a phonetic system, with cards filed chronologically in each surname group. The system is basically one of combining like surnames regardless of their spelling, which allows physical inspection with a minimum of movement between alphabetical areas. With the type of information listed, and with the filing arrangement, the collection becomes a master pedigree with untold genealogical connections in its bounds. In many instances it is possible to check an individual's pedigree lines to their earliest listed ancestor without moving from a particular file cabinet; while in other instances, with a little imagination and approximation, it is possible to run out all filed ancestral connections in a relatively short time. Experience with and knowledge of the filing system is essential for effective use of the files.

Because of the confidential nature of some information listed, and because the facility is in constant use as a processing unit, personal access is limited to certain employees of the Genealogical Society and, at the present (1967) to accredited researchers.

A special patron's service counter has been placed in operation on the third floor of the Genealogical Society Library to provide information from the TIB files. Individuals may gain information in person or by correspondence. Access conditions may change, but at the present time the following procedure should be followed to gain information from the files:

1. Immediate service will be provided upon personal or written request, and photostats of the cards located will be provided at a small fee. No charge will be made if no information is located.

2. By visiting the facility or through correspondence, a person may complete a request form and receive names from the file at no charge, but he must allow a minimum of four hours' time for the personnel at the Society to make the search.

3. The Society will also check the CRA for family group record information and forward it when such a request is made. A small fee is charged for copies of the Archive Record.

Failure to obtain information from the files does not necessarily indicate that the information is not there but may be the result of a lack of sufficient identifying information, the correct facts of identity, or a lack of ability on the part of the person searching the files.

At the present time accredited researchers may gain personal access to the file, though they are expected to obtain information in the ordinary way when a special problem does not exist. Their continued access is dependent upon a number of factors and is also subject to change at the discretion of the management.

It is possible that future conditions might allow the photocopying of non-confidential information in the files through microfilming or some other process, and the information be made available to interested persons. Such information on microcards or on microfilm, made available to branch libraries, would certainly be helpful to researchers.

Because of the nature of the file it is not always possible to locate all information that might be pertinent to a particular problem, and therefore a researcher should not move under the blanket assumption that everything has been obtained from the TIB after one of the clerks has made a check of the files. Under special circumstances, it may be advisable to obtain the services of an accredited researcher or some other competent person who has a working knowledge of the facility and request special entrance privileges to make a more exhaustive search of the files. It should be understood that such a search would be granted at the discretion of the management and only under extenuating circumstances.

The authors present the following information from their experience in the TIB files and in the form of suggestions to gain maximum value from them.

1. TIB represents one of the most valuable modern genealogical tools available to the practicing genealogist and should be of interest to all concerned.

2. The following symbols might appear on cards filed in the TIB:

- a) The red letter "P," "C," or "PC" indicating that that person is shown on an archive record as parent, child, or parent and child.
- b) Additions in red noting that changes have been made since the original ordinances were performed. Names, dates, places, and other facts may be affected.
- c) An "a" sign indicating that the spouse appears on a family group record in the Archives.
- d) "*" indicates that the name was taken from an old style family group record and that there is no sheet in the Archives.
- e) "***" indicates that the name does not appear on a family group record in the Archives.
- f) "****" indicates that the parents have received their endowments.

- g) The letters "T" or "T & E" indicating marriage for time or for time and eternity.

3. Cards are filed in an alphabetical and chronological sequence with like surnames combined and double letters disregarded.

4. Cards with only a surname (no given names nor initials) or with a surname and a title (Mr., Mrs., Grandfather, Uncle, etc.) are filed at the beginning of surname sequence in a chronological order.

5. Some persons appear on both white and buff cards as if they were a male and a female. This is often the case where facts did not specifically indicate whether the person was a male or a female. The names "Francis-Frances," "Alma," "Cleo," etc., often fall into this category.

6. Most females were endowed under their maiden name and the cards reflect this, but some women were endowed under their married name, especially in the early Nauvoo period.

7. The person at whose instance the work was done may have been the individual himself ("self"), the "heir" (the first male member of that family to join the LDS Church), some other relative, or "family representative" (a special designation of the LDS Church).

8. In some instances the work was done as "friend" which does not necessarily indicate that no relationship existed between the proxy and the person whose work was done. Many of these "friends" turn out to be blood relatives.

9. The name of the heir, family representative, friend, or other designated person and his relationship as shown on the card are valuable genealogical clues and should be noted with interest.

10. The Scandinavian patronymic system showing "Dotter" is transcribed to "son."

11. Scandinavian problems require specially-trained personnel to follow the many name possibilities and require

special work in other records for proper solution from the TIB.

12. Some cards are filed in their chronological order by the marriage date, when no birthdate is available.

13. The cards are assumed correct (though they are often not) and corrections will be made only upon sufficient and proper evidence, and when the Genealogical Society is able to do so.

14. Early sealing cards (salmon in color) are often filed immediately behind the endowment card of the individual card of concern and contain valuable information on spouses and sealing facts. Several cards may be extant for certain individuals.

15. Genealogical facts of importance are often indicated on the back of the endowment or sealing card, such as names of spouses and marriage dates, names of children and birthdates, and other items of interest.

16. Hyphenated names might be filed under any of the hyphenated combinations.

17. Several cards exist for the same individual because different identifying facts were given when the information was submitted.

18. Many cards are misfiled, and a card-by-card search of a particular surname group (usually by period of time) will locate the information.

19. Early Nauvoo information was often entered in ink by a fine, quill pen and individual numbers are recorded which apply to original records from which the information was taken.

20. Period approximation is necessary in locating cards when specific date and place information is not available.

21. The color of the ink or typewriter ribbon as well as the particular kind of type is valuable in finding cards which relate to the same person or family.

22. The checking of cards of other known relatives (especially spouses and children) will often enable the searcher

to locate cards of interest, which otherwise could not be found.

23. Special name combination rules and practices are followed by those filing information.

24. The name of the spouse is not always included on the card even though the marriage took place on the endowment date listed on the card.

25. More than one sealing card is on file for some persons.

26. Persons sealed in the President's Office, or in other places, were often sealed again in one of the temples.

27. Sealing cards are on file for deceased spouses as well as living spouses, but not all sealing information is on file in the TIB.

28. Cards are not on file for some persons who have been endowed and whose cards should be on file.

29. Cards are on file for persons who have been excommunicated from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

30. Cards are on file for individuals who have not been endowed, presumably to preserve information.

31. Cards are on file representing information given by the persons themselves, and cards for those same persons may be on file containing information submitted by relatives at a later date which might contain different genealogical facts.

32. The term "in Church" listed in the baptismal space implies that the individual was baptized a member of the Church in life.

33. Some cards show that work was done at the instance of the LDS Church as "Friend."

34. Some cards indicate a family record, such as the "Hatch Record," in the space where the "heir" or "family representative" name should be listed.

35. Cards are on file for parents and children where no connecting information shows such a relationship.

36. Often, with a genealogical fact such as a name or date of birth, considerable extension information can be gained from the files. Determining the name of a father may open the door to considerable new information.

37. The term "liv" or "lvg" listed in the death column indicates that the person was living at the time the ordinance was completed.

38. The place of birth may in reality have been a place of residence or a place of association and not the actual place of birth.

39. Names and places are often misspelled to almost fantastic form and great imagination must be exerted to understand such information.

40. The book and page number at the top of the card refers to the endowment or sealing date and not the baptismal date.

41. The baptismal and endowment dates may serve as valuable clues to lead a person to original records where other family information might be obtained.

42. Information is on file in the TIB which is not on file in the CRA.

43. The year, entered in red, often is listed following the name of the father, the mother and the spouse, to indicate their respective years of birth and to assist in locating their cards.

Perhaps the name *Church Records Archives*, is a slight misnomer for the records which really make up this collection. The CRA implies a much broader and perhaps non-specialized collection of records relating to one or more churches. However, it presently consists of family group records relating to families and individuals whose genealogical and ordinance information have been cleared through the LDS Genealogical Society since January of 1942. The relatively recent date should not give the false impression that only modern information is on file, for the family groups represent individuals from nearly all countries and cover a very wide time period.

Since January 1942, all family group records received and accepted for processing have been copied and placed in the CRA. Much ordinance work was completed prior to 1942 and is of record only in the TIB or the original books of entry in the respective temples and not in the CRA. However, there is genealogical information on file in the CRA which is not on file in the TIB nor the temples. Examples of such are the names and addresses of persons who have submitted information for processing with their sources of information. Another is some sealing information which is not in the TIB but which is of record in the original temple books and in the Archives. It is also a fact that a greater amount of genealogical activity has taken place in the Church since 1942, including much by recent converts, which has resulted in a tremendous collection of family group records.

The two collections—Temple Records Index Bureau (TIB) and Church Records Archives (CRA)—complement each other and the genealogist should use them in conjunction with each other. All persons listed on family group records in the CRA should be found of record in the TIB, but not all persons listed in the TIB are shown on family group records in the CRA.

A "P" and/or a "C" is shown on the TIB card when of record in the CRA, and it is assumed that every name in the CRA is on file in the TIB. The TIB can be searched first as a key to the CRA. An exception is in family group records or pedigrees submitted for filing only. When an individual is shown as a parent on a family group record in the CRA, a star (*) is listed following his name. This enables the searcher to determine whether or not a child on a particular group record is also listed as a parent on another group record. The same system is used to indicate whether a parent or spouse also appears as a parent on a separate group sheet. In both the TIB and the CRA, the year of birth is often included in brackets following the name of a parent or spouse and assists in locating the record of that individual.

Family group records in the CRA are available and open

to the public and are filed in strict alphabetical sequence under the name of the husband. This differs from the TIB, where separate cards are filed for each individual and where names are combined regardless of their actual spelling. When two or more family group records bear the same name, the sheets are filed chronologically with the earliest date first. It will be readily seen that information can be hidden in the CRA when one does not know the parent's name and when that person does not appear as a parent himself on a family group record. In this instance the TIB should be searched to find the individual.

Family group records are presently filed under two major classifications, indicating that ordinance work is completed or is not completed. Under this arrangement, binders with pink labels represent "finished records" or records indicating that all ordinance work has been done, while white labels represent "unfinished records," or records indicating that not all ordinance work has yet been done.

The primary purpose of the CRA is to help prevent duplication of ordinance work and of research. An interested person should check both the finished and unfinished sections of the CRA to determine if others have submitted records of interest to him. These files are open to the public at the Genealogical Society and xerox copy service is available for the searcher's convenience.

As in the TIB, information on file in the CRA is not always genealogically correct nor complete. Its value is directly related to the competency and efforts of the compiler of the record. In some instances the information listed is very limited and the sources of information are so general that they cannot be located in the original. However, many records filed in this section represent sound research practices and are well documented. In both the TIB and the CRA, information has been filed based upon calculations from certain events or circumstances and from approximation or guess-work. This is especially true of some birth dates and places and some death entries. These approximations of course are not always correct and the investigator should search a wide time-period and be alert to various

spellings of names and places when using the collection. He should also be aware of duplication of entry for a person for whom different identifying information was given. One record may be the result of a census enumeration, and the calculated date of birth may vary considerably from a record of the same person compiled using a specific date of birth as taken from a family Bible. Both records may be on file because there was not sufficient evidence to indicate that they represented the same individual.

There are other family group records collections, both in printed form and on microfilm, which could be considered part of the CRA. These include additions of the 1965-67 "Priesthood 3 and 4th Generation Family Group Record Programs," as well as miscellaneous record collections which have been acquired over the years. Some of these have been microfilmed and are available for search through the Library proper. Over 700,000 family group sheets were submitted by members of the Church and other interested persons in the recent "*3 and 4th Generation Family Group Record Programs.*" It was sponsored by the Priesthood Genealogical Committee of the Church and was primarily aimed at motivating people to genealogical activity, but also had the objectives of gathering modern genealogical information and of training members of the Church in current processing procedures of the Genealogical Society. It is estimated that about 20 per cent of the Church membership participated in this program and *the collection will be of special concern in the survey phase of research*, particularly in relation to modern families of the LDS Church. This collection is arranged in alphabetical fashion and shelved in the CRA. It has also been microfilmed and is available to the public through branch libraries.

Miscellaneous family group record collections are also to be found at the Genealogical Society including (1) the Priesthood-sponsored 3 and 4th generation records of 1965-66 in yellow backed binders (mentioned above), (2) sealing records in special suspense files where ordinance work is in process (filed in blue backed binders), (3) orange-backed binders containing sealing information where either no

endowments for the dead were involved or where the endowment was done prior to 1942, (4) Heber J. Grant collection filed in yellow labeled binders, and (5) family group records and pedigree charts which were submitted by LDS Church members after 1924 and which are now on microfilm.

Beginning in the early 1920's, members of the Church were encouraged to file copies of their pedigree charts with the Genealogical Society. They were not checked nor verified for accuracy by the Society and in many instances are not reliable, but they might prove useful in the survey. Names from the first 18,000 pedigree charts were indexed and the index file placed in the Library. This is still available for checking, and special registers are provided to help the researcher to understand the pagination and microfilming sequence. The following information from an earlier edition of the *Genealogical Instruction Manual* will explain this arrangement:

The names on the first 18,000 pedigree charts received were indexed. The card index to these pedigrees . . . provides a ready reference to the names appearing on these 18,000 charts. The cards are arranged in alphabetical order and give the same amount of information for a person as is shown on the pedigree chart on which he appears. At the bottom on each index card is a reference to the relevant pedigree chart. Each group of pedigree charts is identified by the serial number 7, beginning with 7Ba, 7, 7B, 7C etc. through to 7R, and the pedigree charts within each group are numbered 1-1000. For example, 7D - 176 - 12 would indicate that the pedigree chart in question is numbered 176 in group 7D and that the individual concerned appears on line 12 of that chart.⁵

This arrangement was preserved in the microfilming of the pedigree charts, but it is necessary to use a special reference register in the Library to determine the proper roll of microfilm upon which the desired pedigree chart will appear. Only the first 18,000 charts were indexed and the rest have been filed and microfilmed according to the individual listed on line one of each chart.

Family group records under a similar program have been received from members of the Church and other individuals and should be of special value in the general survey phase

of research. In spite of the fact that most of these were submitted by members of the Church, recent converts and others interested in genealogy might find some valuable facts pertaining to their lines of ancestry. Some of these family group records were received as early as 1924 and have been microfilmed in an alphabetical sequence by the name of the husband appearing on each record. A reference register is available in the reference section of the Library to determine which roll of microfilm contains the desired record. These microfilmed collections are available through branch libraries of the Genealogical Society and can be utilized by persons away from Salt Lake City.

The family group collections were begun as early as 1924 and have continued sporadically to the present time. In fact, the recent "3 and 4th generation" programs fall under the same type activity. They are highly secondary in nature, but in the survey phase these collections can prove of value in gathering genealogical facts.

The following situations might well represent conditions under which the majority of these records were submitted:

1. Ordinance work may have been completed for individuals and family units at a date earlier than the CRA was in existence.
2. For one reason or another, an interested person was not eligible to perform ordinance work for a particular individual or family unit and yet felt impressed to see that information in his possession was on file with the Genealogical Society.
3. Motivational programs of gathering and training have been initiated in wards and branches of the Church over the years and such programs have resulted in the collection and filing of family group records.
4. Special retrieval programs for the preservation of valuable information which might otherwise be lost have been in effect. This has resulted in individual and group collections of family group records.

It should be understood that many other LDS genealogical collections are extant and available to the interested researcher but are of special value in one of the other phases of research, and since we have concerned ourselves here with collections of general survey value the other collections will be discussed in following chapters.

Printed Secondary Sources. In addition to *home sources* and *special LDS sources*, there are many *printed secondary sources* of value to the genealogist in the general survey phase. They consist primarily of (1) printed and manuscript genealogies, (2) genealogical dictionaries and indexes, (3) family and regional histories, (4) biographical works, and (3) periodical literature which devotes itself in whole or in part to genealogy.

Many people feel that printed secondary sources are the *only* source of genealogical information. Others never use them at all in their genealogical work, while in reality a road somewhere between these two extremes should be followed. These media are really the tools for reporting genealogical work and are of importance in the general survey phase.

It has been indicated in a previous chapter that the genealogist should approach secondary materials with some caution, but if they are used properly they can be of great value in providing genealogical information. *The quality of the publication is indicated to a degree by the documentation of materials listed therein.* Some genealogies and family histories represent nothing more than the gathering of testimony from living members of the family and in most instances are highly secondary in their source. On the other hand there are family histories and genealogies extant which document each statement of fact with footnote and source reference. By reviewing the "preface," "introduction," and the work itself, the researcher can determine the sources of information used in compiling the work. If the body of the work quotes fact from wills, land records, vital records, military records, or census records, etc., this is evidence that some original searching went into the work and may indicate a

more trustworthy record. However, if no references are given, even though the information is presented with force and apparent veracity, it should be subject to further question. Take the information, but "take it with a grain of salt." Verify it through other sources and let the secondary material merely be a guide or a clue to the truth.

The researcher should use the *surname target approach* to these printed secondary materials. By this we mean he looks in the card catalog of the library, or in such dictionaries and indexes as might be extant which apply to such printed works, for the specific name of the individual of concern. A biographical sketch may have been published on him, or he may appear as a child or parent in a family history or genealogy. He might even appear as an ancestor or descendant on some published pedigree.

The researcher narrows his search by looking first for the *specific name* of interest. Following this he may search for the *general surname* to see if material may include him as part of that coverage. By considering the publishing place or the places of residence of the family, the researcher can narrow this general surname approach. This is even possible with common surnames such as "Jones" or "Smith." The Smith family of DeKalb County, Tennessee, may be of special interest to a particular problem while the Smith family of New York City may be of no interest.

Following the specific and general searches, it is well to attack the problem through the *allied names* involved. The maiden surname of the spouse is an example. It is possible that a family history or genealogy is extant which carries information on a grandmother of the subject, and which gives genealogical facts as to her marriage and issue. This can be of value in extending a pedigree or in providing information necessary to a particular genealogical problem. One should not give up his search in printed materials merely because the subject of interest is not shown in the index. In fact, many of these printed secondary materials are not indexed at all, and much imagination and searching is necessary to try to locate pertinent information.

The alert genealogist will realize that the searching of printed secondary sources is not a one-time thing. As new names are added to the pedigree, it may be necessary to return to such sources and recheck them for information which was previously unknown. It is also possible that new publications have come forth since the first general survey was made, and additional searches are in order.

Special indexes and guides have been published which should be used in conjunction with genealogies, family histories, pedigrees, and biographical works. *The American Genealogical-Biographical Index* edited by Fremont Rider is a good example, as is *Index to Genealogical Periodicals*, by Donald Lines Jacobus.⁷ Jacobus has indexed important genealogical periodical literature in America as it pertains to family history, and the competent researcher will be alert to such works.

The American Genealogical-Biographical Index has attempted to index individual names as they have been located in published genealogies and family histories. Some researchers give little credence to this work, but it can be of special value in locating information on individuals which cannot readily be located in other sources. The work is merely an index to the name, by page and publication. The searcher must look in one of the first volumes for a key as to the exact bibliographic information and then must locate that work in a library by the "author," or "title" approach. The first series of this index is complete and is on the shelves of many large libraries, and the second series is only completed through the letter "H" at this writing. (1967).

Other dictionaries, compendia, indexes, guides and keys are available on a national basis as well as a local or regional basis to index genealogies and family histories. With an inquisitive mind and an understanding of the library classification and cataloging procedure, the interested genealogist can locate such works and use them to advantage. Again, it is emphasized that periodic searches in the indexes are necessary. This is particularly true of indexes to genealogical periodicals. Often, the periodical indexes are annual

and a new edition may bring to light information which was not available in previous searches. Some of our better genealogical periodicals have indexes within each volume by subject and by name and also have master indexes to a series of volumes. An example is the *New England Historical and Genealogical Register*.

A word of caution to those who spend time in these printed secondary sources: It may not be wise to spend a lot of time in unindexed periodical literature, or in trying to exhaust the many family histories and genealogies that might exist for a common surname. It may be to one's advantage to take the "surname target" approach, looking for the specific name, the general surname, the allied name; but when little or nothing is found it is wise to go into original records and locate further facts before returning to the printed sources. Looking for a "Smith" in printed genealogies without knowing specific dates of birth, marriage or death, etc., is usually fruitless.

The printed secondary approach is of more value and concern to the North American genealogist than to others, though they, too, must not neglect the possibility of genealogical fact relating to their problem being in print.

Perhaps *regional and local histories* are of more general interest to all areas of research, for individuals and families have been the backbone of history, and their lives have been written about and included in many historical works. Many of the regional and local histories include special genealogical or biographical sections where the genealogist can gain valuable information. It must be remembered that genealogical and biographical information on relatives of the subject is important to the tracing of ancestry; and in cases where one's immediate ancestor cannot be located, it might be possible to locate a brother or sister or some other relative and thereby gain valuable genealogical information.

Although biographical publications are often oriented to the prominent, the researcher should be aware of their broad coverage in a regional and in a subject way. The accompanying outline of biographical works which are available in the

J. Reuben Clark Jr., Library at Brigham Young University will help to impress the individual with this fact:

Selected Examples of Collective Biography⁸

Biographical Indexes

Biography Index

A Dictionary of Universal Biography

National Biographies

England

Who's Who

Who Was Who

Dictionary of National Biography

Biographical Directory of English Architects, 1660-1840

United States

National Cyclopedia of American Biography

Who's Who in America

Who Was Who in America

Dictionary of American Biography

Directory of American Scholars

American Men of Science

Who's Who in the West

Who's Who in the Northwest

Who's Who in Commerce & Industry

Leaders in Education

The American Catholic Who's Who

American College Student Leaders

Appleton's Cyclopedia of American Biography

Other Countries

Neue Deutsche Biographie

Who's Who in Germany

Biographie Directory of the U.S.S.R.

Japan Biographical Encyclopedia & Who's Who

Who's Who in Israel

Dictionnaire Biographique Francais Contemporain

Who's Who in Canada

International Biographies

World Biography

The International Who's Who

Current Biography
Chamber's Biographical Dictionary
New Century Cyclopedia of Names
Who's Who in the United Nations
Webster's Biographical Dictionary

Government Biographies

Official Congressional Directory
Biographical Directory of American Congress
The Dept. of State Biographic Register

Subject Biographies

Who Knows and What
Who's Who in American Art
Twentieth Century Authors and Supplement (desk)
Who's Who in the Theatre
Grove's Dictionary of Music and Musicians

Many fine biographical works in the physical and applied sciences as well as the medical sciences are available.

Mormon and Utah

LDS Biographical Encyclopedia
LDS Educators
Utah's Distinguished Personalities
Pioneers and Prominent Men of Utah (covers 1847-1868)

It is a common practice for the states of the U.S. to produce multi-volume histories of their areas with the last volume usually devoted to biography.

Periodical literature cannot be passed over lightly by the genealogist who desires to conduct exhaustive research. We refer not only to genealogical periodicals which involve themselves solely with genealogy, but to periodical literature which might contain genealogy only incidentally. Newspapers could be listed in this latter class.

Newspapers are an important source of genealogical information. Articles and notices found in newspapers usually are published about the time of the event, making them a vital source. Errors may occasionally appear because of mistakes in type-setting, or because the person giving information may not have known details of the personal history.

Misstatements do appear in obituaries, marriage notices, social or news events. However, *the time and place of the event described can be a reliable and legally accepted fact when the publishing of the same is at the approximate time of said event.*

Many newspapers dating from early periods have been preserved and may be found in various libraries, court houses, newspaper offices, etc.

The following genealogical and historical notices might be found in *newspapers*:

1. Obituaries of persons passing away. These may identify parents or ancestry of the deceased person. They may give his religious affiliations, the names of close relatives, date of birth, place of birth and residence, marriage record, some accomplishments, movements and activities, etc.
2. Marriage notices. These, besides giving information about the marriage event, may record the names of the parents and close relatives of the bride and groom, and may record places of residence, life events, religious affiliations, etc.
3. Birth announcements. These are particularly found in later years, but occasionally in earlier times, and when found will record the time and place of the birth, and the names of the parents. Other relationships, even of prominent relatives, may also appear.
4. Family reunions and social events. Accounts of these gatherings, get-togethers and family, religious or fraternal activities are frequently reported in the local newspapers, and relationships, places of residence, religious affiliations, etc. are often included.
5. News items. Graduations, appointments, accomplishments, movements, etc., of people in a community are usually an important part of the coverage made by a local newspaper. These may be important to the genealogist in preparing family history or biography, and in tracing relationships of his kinsmen.

Newspapers not only are a valuable source of genealogi-

cal fact within themselves, but they serve as advertising medium in research. The student is referred to the chapter on "Reference Materials" for guides and directories of special value in using newspapers. Using newspapers to gain genealogical information can prove very interesting and productive as the following extract will indicate:

... This afternoon I was giving a rather cursory look at the May issue of *The Pittsburgh Presbyterian*, and when I came to the column *In the Mail*, I merely glanced at the signatures, saw that none of the letters had been written by anyone I knew, and went on to glance through the next two pages. What ever made me, a few minutes later, go back to the middle one of three letters and read it I'll never know, but read it I did (and not the other two!). The name Vaughan didn't register with me, but when I read that Agnes Vaughan married Samuel Dempster I was really startled. You see, my Mother's brother, my Uncle Bruce Hill, married Agnes Dempster, who had a brother Samuel. So I phoned across the street to my cousin, Alexander Dempster Hill, and found out that there definitely had been Vaughans in his mother's ancestry. He looked up a few records that he has and called me back. Agnes and Samuel were his great-grandparents. They apparently had four children, all born in Scotland, where three of them, James, Margaret and Mary, all died as children. The oldest was Alexander, who was born in 1836, and thus was about fourteen when he and his parents came to this country in 1850, arriving on October 4th of that year, and coming on to Turtle Creek, near Pittsburgh . . ."⁹

Further genealogical fact was included, but this is sufficient to show the value of genealogical periodical literature as an advertising medium and as a source of genealogical information itself.

¹Derek Harland, *Genealogical Research Standards* (Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft, Inc., 1963), p. 20.

²"Tradition and Family History," *The American Genealogist*, IX (July, 1932), pp. 1-7.

³*Genealogical Instruction Manual*, op. cit., supplement "B."

⁴Mrs. William Wallace McPherson of Chicago, Illinois, "A Few Odd Ways by Which Family Records Have Been Preserved," *The American Genealogist*, I (July 1934, p. 1. (Reprinted in Noel C. Stevenson's *The Genealogical Reader* in 1958.)

⁵*Genealogical Instruction Manual* sec. 11, p. 12.

⁶Fremont Rider (ed.), *The American Genealogical Biographical Index* (Middletown, Conn: Godfrey Memorial Library, 1952).

⁷Donald Lines Jacobus, *Index to Genealogical Periodicals* (Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing Co., 1963).

⁸Hattie M. Knight, "Some Selected Examples of Collective Biography," *Library Science Class 370* (Brigham Young University, Provo, Utah, 1962), unpublished circular.

⁹Letter from L. C. Hammond to Norman E. Wright, December 13, 1957.

Chapter 9

THE SPECIAL LDS SURVEY

It has already been suggested that every genealogist beginning research, or the genealogist initiating a new research problem, should conduct a general survey by searching the home sources, special LDS sources, and special printed secondary sources. Because of the peculiar nature of genealogical emphasis in The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, there are special sources which members of the Church should also search in the survey phase. This would have reference to those persons who are themselves or whose relatives or ancestors have been associated in any way with the LDS Church. Others could disregard this chapter.

In addition to the Temple Records Index Bureau and the Church Records Archives which are of interest to all genealogists, the person who has been associated with the Church (or whose kin have been connected with it) should make a comprehensive search in the following records:

1. LDS membership collections.
2. Church emigration records.
3. Ordinance collections.
4. Special collections of the Church Historian.
5. Miscellaneous "Early Church and Utah" collections.

Membership Collections. *Ward and branch records.* Ward and branch records from the stakes and missions of the Church are perhaps the most important early membership records and are of much value in genealogical research for Church-connected families. Following the organization of the Church on April 6, 1830, a record was kept in every organized ward

and branch pertaining to blessings of children, baptisms, confirmations, ordinations to the priesthood, marriages, divorces, disfellowship actions, excommunications, deaths and certain other events. However, due to the persecutions and physical hardships which the Church experienced in its earlier years, many records prior to 1850 were lost or destroyed. Early records are available for England, some beginning as early as 1837, and a few from other areas, but most have been lost or destroyed.

Some early branch and ward records were in diary form on a day-by-day basis, listing events and actions of importance, while others were of a journal type entry, consisting of a book of either plain or ruled pages. In these books were written data pertaining to meetings and members of the respective ward or branch. The amount of detail was left to the individual clerk, which accounts for the wide variety of material or information contained in the records. Some of the records included tithing and fast-offering donations, temple and meeting house funds, miscellaneous meetings. Some contained information on the "Perpetual Emigration Fund" of the Church.

Some of the early ward and branch records were preserved, and these are a gold mine of fact for the researcher interested in early Church history. A list of English branch records of an early period is available at the reference desk of the Genealogical Society and in the Genealogical Research Technology laboratory at Brigham Young University. A list of those preserved for Illinois, Iowa, and Missouri with their microfilm call numbers follow.

ILLINOIS

Hancock County

Crooked Creek Branch	1847-50	1131	pt 148
Macedonia Branch	1847-50	1131	pt 148
Nauvoo 5th Ward	1848-51	2570	
Nauvoo 5th Ward	1842-46	6502	pt 112
(this was included in Salt Lake			
City 13th Ward records)			
Ramus Branch	early-1843	1131	pt 148

Pulaski County			
Mound Branch	1845-46	1131	pt 148
Adams County			
Lima Branch	1840-53	2570	
Quincy Branch			

IOWA

Iowa Territory	1839-55	2624	
Territory of Iowa	early-1839	2624	
Appanoose County			
Camp of Israel	1846	1131	pt 153
Decatur County			
Garden Grove Branch	early-1847	1131	pt 154
Hardin County			
Coonville Branch	1848-51	1131	pt 154
Union Branch	1848-51	1131	pt 154
Harrison County			
Harris Grove Branch	1848-52	1131	pt 154
Lee County			
Ambrosia Branch	1844-46	1131	pt 153
Zarahemla Branch	1841	2624	
Pottawattamie County			
Lake Branch	early-1851	1131	pt 154
Lake Branch	1843	(book PB, No.	1094)
Pottawattamie County			
County Branch	1848-51	2624	
Shirts Branch	1848-51	1131	pt 154

MISSOURI

Dry Hill Branch (no county listed)	1847, 1855-59	3609	
St. Louis Branch (listed in Pettis Co)	1847-62	1131	pt 176

In 1877 (about 1855 or earlier in the original nineteen wards in Salt Lake City) this journal-type record was changed to bound volumes consisting of printed forms, several to a page. In these newer

record books, space was reserved for recording details of birth and parentage, and each member of the ward or branch was listed. In March 1941, this system was discontinued and the present card system was inaugurated which allows for the recording of a great deal more genealogical data. Under this present system a membership card is prepared in duplicate for each member of the Church. On it are recorded details of birth, parentage, marriage, the names of spouse and children and ordinance data. One copy is retained in the ward or branch record of members; the second copy is sent for filing in the Membership Department of the Presiding Bishop's Office, 47 East South Temple, Salt Lake City. When a member moves from one ward to another, the bishop of the former ward sends the membership card to the Membership Department, from where it is eventually sent to the bishop of the ward where the individual is now residing. When a member dies, his membership record, to which have been added details of the death, is sent by his bishop to the Presiding Bishop's Office, where the death is noted. The record is then transmitted to the Church Historian's Office and is filed in the Deceased Members' File.

Most of the original ward and branch membership records are housed in the Church Historian's Office, 47 East South Temple, Salt Lake City. The originals are not available to the public. They have, however, been microfilmed from the date of their commencement up to about 1948. Searches in these microfilm copies may be made in the Library of the Genealogical Society.¹

The early "Long Form" ward records were about four feet in length when open and were evidently not used in the branches of the Church at an early date. The "Long Form" contained the following facts:

1. Name of the individual and his parents' names.
2. Individual's date and place of birth (detail varied considerably).
3. Date of blessing of the individual, and by whom performed.
4. Dates of first baptism and confirmation, and by whom performed.
5. Date of ordination to the priesthood, the office, and by whom ordained.
6. Dates of rebaptism and reconfirmation, and by whom performed.

7. Date the individual was received of record and from where.
8. Date the individual removed and to where.
9. Date of death.
10. Remarks column.

Many of these records were indexed, and the entries were in chronological order based on when the families or individuals entered the organization. Often the family statistics were entered in the order of birth, with the parents entered first and data on the children following in their proper order. The information was no better than the informant and the recorder, and much incorrect data is listed. In some instances the clerk may have recorded the information weeks later from memory. In the early 1877 records indexes were evident, though some were incomplete and inaccurate. If no action was taken upon an individual, such as baptism, ordination etc., he was sometimes not included in the record. This was particularly true when a new record was initiated and only contained information on recent actions. This possibly accounts for the situation in which a person is known to have been an active member in a particular ward or branch but no record apparently exists for him. The researcher must search earlier ward and branch records to locate information when the individual first entered the ward or branch and when some action was taken in his behalf.

After 1892, but primarily from 1900 to 1920, a smaller-sized (short form) record was maintained in wards and branches. In some instances, information was brought forward from the older records but at times both the old and new records were used concurrently. This accounts for some information being incorrectly entered or entirely omitted.

The 1892-1920 records were indexed to include the record number of the member, the record page where his ordinations were recorded, and the page number where his blessing (if a child) was entered. The record itself contained information on the individual as follows:

1. His name and parents' names.
2. His date and place of birth.
3. His baptism and confirmation dates, and by whom performed.
4. A remarks column where removals, excommunications, disfellowship actions and other items of interest were entered.

After 1920, a bound volume with pages divided into sections for individual statistics was in use. A membership number was assigned each person and entries were not necessarily in alphabetical nor chronological order. The records were well indexed, and generally speaking the recording methods and practices were much improved over earlier systems.

In 1907, the "Form E" or "Annual Report" was introduced in all wards and branches of the Church and this record is a boon to genealogists. The record was separate from the membership records and included statistics and information on births and blessings, baptisms and confirmations, marriages and divorces, priesthood ordinations, missionary calls, excommunications and deaths, and after 1938 contained a record of the ward or branch officers. The entries were made quarterly on special columnar forms for each action and accumulated on an annual basis. The originals are in the custody of the Church Historian, but they have been microfilmed through 1948 for wards, and through 1950 for the missions. The "Form E" reports are usually on the last roll of microfilm pertaining to the membership records or on rolls immediately following those. Researchers seeking names and dates after 1906 should be aware of this collection.

The ward and branch records in original form are in the custody of the Church Historian also and microfilms of these for the dates listed above are available for search at the Genealogical Society in Salt Lake City or through one of its branch libraries. When the microfilm is unreadable for some reason, it is possible to search the originals by

gaining permission of the Church Historian or one of his assistants.

In using some of the mission records it is necessary to identify the district or conference in order to locate the actual branch records. The district or conference corresponds to the stake, which is an ecclesiastical division just over the ward or branch. Andrew Jensen's *Encyclopedic History of the Church*² contains historical and boundary information on wards and branches prior to 1930, giving location, creation, deactivation, and other historical facts. Real estate maps are available for several of the larger Utah metropolitan communities, listing ward boundaries. Both the Genealogical Society and Brigham Young University have early ward boundary maps in their library map collections. Maps and branch statistics are available on early English branches in an unpublished collection at the reference desk at the Genealogical Society or in the Genealogical Research Technology Laboratory at Brigham Young University.

The division of wards and some branches often followed a complex pattern, and the researcher must study and familiarize himself with the particular ward or branch of interest in order to locate and properly use its records. According to Gardner, Harland and Smith, ". . . if the ancestor lived in some town, parish or place where there was no branch of the LDS Church, then a map of that county should be used and the names of the branches in that county considered until the nearest branch(es) has been determined. . . ."³

The Genealogical Society has initiated registers with an alphabetical listing of wards, branches, districts, conferences, and missions which give microfilm call-numbers and other facts to assist the researcher. It is hoped that a program to make this information available to branch libraries will be undertaken in the near future.

A special index to assist in locating persons in the various wards of Utah at an early date will be found in *Registry of Names of Persons Residing in the Various Wards As to Bishop's*

Reports, Great Salt Lake City, Dec. 28th A.D. 1852 (microfilm call number 22690 Pt 306). This valuable index gives the names and wards of persons living in various parts of Utah in 1852-53. Copies of this index have been bound and are on file at the reference desk of the Genealogical Society and in the Genealogical Research Technology laboratory at BYU.

Another index of special importance pertaining to early ward and branch records is that commonly called the "Membership Card Catalog." This index was compiled from early ward, branch, district and conference records of the Church. They were primarily early records of the British Mission of the Church. The collection has been improperly called the "Minnie Margetts File" after its compiler. The collection is in three sections and has been microfilmed for convenient use. Call number 54261 Pt 1 contains a listing of branches, wards, districts, conferences and stakes indexed. This made up section "one" of the original. It also contains entries that are indexed but lacking full names, and these are filed by locality. This represented section "two" of the original. Part of section "three" is included in the roll and it contains the main card index of members indexed "A-B" of the alphabet. Call number 54261 Pts 2-15 contains the remainder of section "three," which includes the card index of members indexed "B-Z." Some overlap in the "B" alphabetical sequence is noted.

Two Brigham Young University students in Genealogical Research Technology are presently (1967) conducting a study on LDS ward and branch records, with an idea of presenting information which will better assist persons in their use. The work will include maps of ward boundaries and other pertinent facts and should be available shortly after January, 1967.

One cannot emphasize strongly enough *the value of ward and branch records* to LDS genealogical research. They are often overlooked because people do not know how to use them or cannot find them, but many genealogical problems are to be solved from them if they are used properly. The present barriers against their use is their often

unindexed nature, their near illegibility in some instances, and the difficulty one encounters in locating the call number for the proper film. The new registers available at the Genealogical Society are of special value in overcoming the last-named barrier, but the solution to the first two is to get into the records and dig, "line by line and letter by letter." Many early LDS Church genealogical problems have their solution in ward or branch records if the researcher will search them thoroughly and properly.

In 1941 the Church initiated an *individual membership certificate program*, and, according to information given at the 1964 Genealogical Society training session, the system was first introduced in the Granite and Liberty Stakes in 1920. The system was not in complete operation for the entire Church until 1948, however. Since that time, each member of the Church has had a separate membership certificate completed in his behalf when he was blessed (named) or when he became a member through baptism and confirmation. The certificate is maintained in the ward or branch where the individual resides, and, upon his removal to a different area, the certificate is forwarded to the Membership Office at Church headquarters for its disposition to the proper ward or branch of removal. A duplicate is maintained at the Membership Department, which is presently located at 47 East South Temple Street in Salt Lake City, Utah. In some instances, additional copies are constructed when a member enters military service or goes from home to school. The original remains in the "home ward" and the duplicate follows the member and is maintained in his ward or branch of residence. The original is white, the Membership Office duplicate is green, and the special duplicates are pink.

Information called for on the membership card includes the following on the front:

1. Name, address, sex, priesthood, date and place of birth.
2. Parents' names.

3. Blessing and ordination dates, and names of those who officiated.
4. Name of patriarch and date of patriarchal blessing.
5. Marriage and endowment date, and name of temple where completed.
6. Name and date of mission served.
7. Name of spouse, with date and place of civil marriage.

On the reverse side:

8. Date of removal from ward, with name of ward and stake, and street address.
9. Date posted at Presiding Bishop's Office (Membership Office) and date accepted.
10. Remarks.
11. Other spouse and date of marriage.

The purpose of the membership cards is to provide a roster of all Church members, giving names and addresses, etc. It provides a convenient means of transferring membership from one ward or branch to another and enables the Membership Department of the Church to keep the record up-to-date. It includes data such as additional children in the family, additional marriages and ordination details, death statistics, etc. It also provides a good system for preservation of records.

Access to the membership certificates is limited to members of the immediate family, either in person or through correspondence with the ward clerk or the Membership Department of the Church.

Since the inception of this program, the Church has also maintained a "Deceased Members' File," pertaining to members who have died since 1941. Upon the members' death, the ward clerk returns the membership certificate to the Membership Department after filling in special death information. Upon receipt of the original membership certificate, the Membership Department places the certifi-

cate in the deceased members' file where it remains as a permanent record. At the present time these are in the Church Historian's custody and may be used as genealogical sources with the Church Historian's permission.

When using any of the membership collections of the LDS Church it is well to keep in mind that many members moved a great deal from ward to ward, and prior to 1941 records may be found in several different wards or branches. However, after 1941 a single membership certificate is to be located. Again the information is no better than the informant, and some error exists; but if the researcher will attempt to locate the subject of concern in each ward or branch where he resided in the early history of the Church, he may gain a clearer picture of the actual situation. In some instances prior to 1941, the ward or branch record where an individual resided most of his life may be quite meager in genealogical content, whereas the ward or branch to which he removed may have a complete record. The researcher must check for possible facts in each location where the member resided.

The LDS Church took a census of its members in 1914, 1920, 1925, 1930, 1935, 1940, 1950, 1955, and in 1960. These are not membership records in the strictest sense, but have been included here in that grouping. The genealogical facts included are the name of each person in the household, his age, sex, and place of birth. The priesthood of each male member is indicated as is information relating to the ward or branch record number which might be of value in locating the individual in the original record; but otherwise, the rest of the information included is of little genealogical value.

The records have been arranged in an alphabetical sequence and microfilmed for convenient use. They are available at the Genealogical Society in Salt Lake City and through its branch libraries. For ease in searching, the 1914-1935 census schedules have been combined into one alphabetical series.

The census records are filed by the name of the head of

the household, and their main value is to locate individuals. The records are often incomplete and in some instances quite unreliable. It is possible that some were completed from ward and branch records and were not a result of an actual enumeration of members. Some of the facts were probably given from the memory of the clerk and are subject to question.

Church Emigration Records. Church emigration records have been preserved from an early period and are available for search at the Genealogical Society or at any of its branch libraries. The following interesting and informative article appeared in the *Genealogical Society Observer*⁴ and should be of special importance to persons interested in LDS emigration.

DO YOU HAVE EARLY MORMON PIONEER ANCESTRY? HERE ARE FACTS ABOUT IMMIGRATION RECORDS

It has been 119 years since the first company of Mormon pioneers entered the Salt Lake Valley to mark the beginning of a migration which over the next 40 years included 90,000 immigrants. For many reasons descendants are interested in learning more about their pioneer ancestors—when they crossed the plains, if they pulled handcarts, when they arrived in the Salt Lake Valley, plus other interesting details which have escaped the memories of survivors and which have not been recorded in family records. Fortunately, the Church kept some records which are significant for this period of church history and with which few Latter-day Saints are acquainted.

"The general plan of migration to Zion," writes Gustive O. Larson, "included two major divisions: First, . . . the shipping agency in England chartering ships. . . ; the second included a receiving agency on the American Frontier" to assist the immigrants on the journey to the Great Basin. The latter included a church agent at the port of entry and another one "at the outfitting point on the frontier." In the Church Historian's Library the records which were maintained by the various agencies of the immigration program are safely stored. For the benefit of record searchers and to preserve the original documents, microfilmed copies are available in the Genealogical Society Library. These microfilmed records are here presented under the two major divisions: A. Shipping records; and B. Crossing the plains records.

- A. The Church established a shipping agency in the British Mission Office in Liverpool, England, in 1849. The records of this

agency include the names, ages, occupations, addresses of prospective passengers, the names of the ships, and the departure date of the ships. An index is available on microfilm to assist researchers in the use of these records.

1. Emigration records for the British Isles and other European countries, 1849-1914. Serial Number 6184, call number F/942/K2m, parts 1 (1849-55), 2 (1855-63), 3 (1863-74), 4 (1875-1903), 5 (1903-1914), and 6 (1914-23).
 2. Index to above. Serial number 38335, call number F/942/K2m, parts 1 (A-Bri), 2 (Bro-Cy), 3 (D-Ha) 4 (Ha-Jones), 5 (Jong-Mh), 6 (Mi-Petersen), 7 (Peterson-Smith, O.), 8 (Smith, P-Wh), and 9 (Whi-Z).
 3. Emigrants sailing from Rotterdam via Liverpool, 19 Jan 1904-2 Sep 1914. Serial number 6186, call number F/949.2/K2m. 1 reel.
 4. Emigrants leaving Swedish Mission, 1904-1932. Serial number 6188, call number F/948.5/K2m. 1 reel.
- B. Records of those people who crossed the plains to Utah between 1847-1869. From 1847 to 1856 pioneers were required to provide their own transportation. Handcarts were used from 1856 to 1860 (ten companies in all). From 1861 until the completion of the Transcontinental Railroad in 1869, church team trains were in operation. The latter consisted of teams, wagons, and drivers provided by the Saints in response to the annual call from The First Presidency for the purpose of transporting immigrants to Utah.
1. Pioneers crossing the plains, 1847-1869. Serial number 38335, call number F/979.2/W2mp, parts 10 (A-Ek), 11 (El-Mo), and 12 (Mu-Z).
 2. Handcart companies, Hafen and Hafen, *Handcarts to Zion*, Arthur H. Clark Co., 1960. In this book is included a roster for each of the ten companies.

LDS emigration records include Church-sponsored emigrations from certain European countries and the emigration of some LDS pioneers who journeyed across United States and Mexican Territory to Utah between 1847 and 1869. Those who came to Utah under their own private arrangements are not included in these records. The LDS emigration records may be conveniently divided into the following groups and are all available on microfilm at the Genealogical Society or through a branch library:

1. Card Index to Shipping Records (Britain)
2. Shipping Records (Britain)
3. Shipping Records from other European countries
4. Records of the Perpetual Emigration Fund Company
5. Crossing the Plains Index

The Card Index to Shipping Records covers the periods 1849 to 1885 and 1899 to 1925 and shows the names of passengers, the name of the ship, and the date it sailed from England. This collection is often referred to as "Crossing the Ocean Index" and is on microfilm (call number 38335 Pts 1-9). If the passengers were travelling in families, the name of the head of the family appears first on the index card followed by the names of the rest of that family. Sometimes friends of the same surname (especially among those from Wales) travelled together. In such cases, the individual whose name appears first in the passenger list will appear on the index card as the head of the family. Other friends of the same surname will be found listed as members of that family.

The researcher should search both the "Crossing the Ocean Index" and the original shipping records as described below. Some persons may have been listed in the shipping records but for some reason or another did not sail, and hence are not listed in the "Crossing the Ocean Index."

An example will help to illustrate this point. According to the "Crossing the Ocean Index," Samuel Priday and family sailed from England on the ship "Amazon" under date of 4 June 1863. The index card listed the following:

Samuel Priday (Amazon — 4 June 1863)

Mary "

Thomas "

Jane "

Mary "

Wm. "

Sarah "

A check of the actual shipping records for the "Amazon"

listed Charles and his wife Pheoline (a son and daughter-in-law) who did not come at that time, though they were listed in the shipping records:

Samuel Priday	45	Mason	(London Conference)
Mary	"	46	Wife
Charles	"	26	Mason (did not come this trip, came later)
Pheoline	"	24	Wife (did not come this trip, came later)
Thomas	"	18	Mason
Jane	"	16	Spinster
Mary	"	14	Spinster
William	"	11	
Sarah	"	9	Spinster

A check of "Liverpool" shipping records for even an earlier date listed the same family and another possible child (Martha, age 20):

14 May 1862 — Ship William Tapscott from London

Samuel Priday	45	Stonemason	(not going)
Mary	do	48	Wife
Charles	do	25	Stonemason
Pheobe	do	24	Wife
Martha	do	20	Spinster
Thomas	do	17	Stonemason
Jane E.	do	15	
Mary	do	13	
William	do	10	
Sarah	do	7	

If an individual is not listed on an index card as the head of a family it will be necessary to read every card of that surname for he might be listed as a member of a family. Separate cards list those who were travelling alone. The index card lists the name of the ship the emigrant travelled on, and this information will enable the researcher to move to the original shipping records where further information might be obtained.

The actual shipping records for the period covered above are on microfilm also under the following:

- F* *Emigration Records, LDS Emigration*
 6184: *UTAH* *Records from the Liverpool Office . . .*
 26. *(LDS Emigrants from the British Isles*
 and other European countries . . .)
 1849-1925.
- Pt* 1. 1849-1855
 2. 1855-1863
 3. 1863-1874
 4. 1875-1885; 1899-1913
 5. 1903-1914
 6. 1913-1925

It will be of interest to some to know that the gap from 1885 to 1899 was caused by the Edmunds/Tucker bill, which was enacted against polygamy. It was feared that the "Mormons" were using such shipping to supply wives for Utah polygamy.

Shipping records are available also for emigration from the Scandinavian, Netherlands and Swedish Missions. The Genealogical Society call numbers and the periods covered are:

- F* *Emigration Records, LDS Emigration*
 6185: *UTAH* *Records of the Scandinavian Mission,*
 27. *(LDS Emigrants from Denmark, Nor-*
 way and Sweden . . .) 1854-1920.
- Pt* 1. 1854-1896 *Pt* 2. 1901-1920
- F* *Emigration Records of the Netherlands*
 6186: *UTAH* *Mission, (A list of Emigrants sailing*
 28. *from Rotterdam, via Liverpool, England)*
 1904-1914.
- F* *Emigration Records, LDS Emigration*
 6188: *UTAH* *Records of the Swedish Mission, kept in*
 30. *Stockholm, Sweden. (LDS Emigrants*
 leaving the Swedish Mission), 1905-
 1932.

Perpetual Emigration Fund Company records cover the period 1850-1877. This collection is valuable in locating the names of individuals who received assistance from the Church emigrating funds. The call number follows:

F

6180 UTAH

Names of persons and sureties indebted to the Fund Company for the period 1850-1877.

The above listed emigration records have a significant genealogical value. They usually indicate the specific conference (district) to which the person belonged prior to emigration, which is lacking in the shipping records for persons originating outside of the British Mission. The records may supply names of persons whose identity was previously unknown as well as dates of events such as departure and arrival which are important in planning research action. Ages, occupations and addresses of emigrants may give clues to other information as the following example indicates:

Abraham Done emigrated from England as a child. The card-index Shipping File (Emigrations) in the Church Historian's Office was checked for his name, without result. The search was continued by reading every card bearing the surname "DONE" and the following entry was found:

DONE, ANN

1855: Apr. 22—Sailed on ship "Samuel Curling" (p. 5)

John Done

Sarah Done

Abraham Done

Eliza A. Done

This indicates that the head of the family was Ann Done, who, with four others, sailed from England on the *Samuel Curling*, 22 April 1855.

To find the possible additional information, the Shipping Records (Emigrations by Ship) were searched for the 22 April, 1855, ship *Samuel Curling*. The microfilm copy at the Genealogical Society disclosed:

SHIP: Samuel Curling, of 1467 Tons Register. Sanders Curling: Master. Sailed: 22 April 1855.

page 169:

Ann Done age 49

John Done age 28

Sarah Done age 26

Abraham Done age 2

Eliza A. Done age 9 months

Address:

Opposite the Royal Oak

Cock Brook, Ashton-under-Lyne.

Note that the ages and the address of the family at the time passage on the *Samuel Curling* was booked, are given.

A record of the journey was normally kept by the official clerk of each company of emigrants. These journals contain details of the crossing and of events such as births, marriages, deaths of Church members, conversions and baptisms of non-LDS passengers and crew. Many of these journals, complete with valuable items of genealogical data, were reproduced in the Millennial Star. Copies of the Millennial Star are in the Church Historian's Office where they can be read by permission. Copies of the journals are also found in the looseleaf "Journal History of the Church" which can only be used at the Church Historian's Office by special permission.⁵

The emigration of persons across the United States and Mexican Territory to Utah is commonly known as the Crossing the Plains Index and covers the period 1847-1869. The collection was prepared from the Journal History of the Church (a manuscript history arranged in loose-leaf sections kept at the Church Historian's Office) and from other sources such as the Deseret News. Each card lists the name of the person (or head of family) who crossed the plains and, usually, the source of that information. Not all of the rosters of persons who crossed the plains have been preserved, and the card index is somewhat incomplete.

The call number for the Crossing the Plains Index is 38335 Pts 10-12.

The following examples illustrate what might be found on cards in the Crossing the Plains Index:

Ch. Em.

RUDY, HENRY, and family

1862: Oct. 2—Arrived in G.S.L. City in Capt.

James S. Brown's ox train.

(Des. News 12:113)

Ch. Em.

ROWS, SAMUEL, and 6 persons

1852: Crossed plains in 21st Company.

(Capt. Allen Weeks)

J.H. Dec. 21, 1852, supplement p. 130.

SIMON, EDWARD (35)

1852: Feb. 10—Sailed from Liverpool, Eng. On

ship "Ellen Maria." (*Brit. Miss. Feb. 10, 1852, p. 3*)
1852: *Crossed plains in Capt. Abraham O. Smoot's Company. (Supplement p. 141.)*

The Daughters of the Utah Pioneers Magazine,⁶ in centennial editions—1847, published in 1947; 1848, published in 1948; 1849, published in 1949; and 1850, published in 1950—contains names and genealogical facts on persons who came to Utah during those years in sponsored Mormon companies. The 1956 volume contains a list of the persons who died while crossing the plains in the years 1847 to 1868, and though highly secondary and incomplete, can provide valuable genealogical information.

United States Customs passenger lists, Customs lists of aliens, and Immigration passenger lists of ships arriving at the ports of Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, and New Orleans are available at the Genealogical Society from 1820 through 1876. These shipping lists represent the United States version of the emigration records just mentioned and can be of great value in further confirmation of facts. Let us cite one example:

The shipping lists of the British Mission for the first few months of 1849 have been lost, or at least are not included on the microfilmed copy. However, United States' shipping records of immigrants arriving at U.S. ports are extant for this period and can be used to fill in the missing information. One of the authors had the experience of not being able to find his great-grand-father's shipping entry for April of 1849 in British Mission records, though he understood the man sailed from Liverpool and arrived at New Orleans. A search of United States Customs lists disclosed a passenger list entry for the man and his family. A bonus entry of the search was information on the parents-in-law and one brother-in-law. Prior to this find (in 1962) researchers had been looking for death records of the "in-laws" in England, supposing they had died there. However, the persons of interest were in the United States; "Just a matter of searching in the *wrong* country!"

An index exists for the port of New York 1820-1846 which is of special value. In most instances, however, in order to properly use the records, it is necessary to determine the name of the ship, along with the date and port of arrival. There are over 400 rolls of microfilm for the port of New York alone, and one can see that specific information is necessary to search the proper shipping records. For complete information on U.S. Customs lists the reader is referred to *Guide to Records in the National Archives*.⁷

Many other publications and films contain information on emigrants and many of these sources have not yet been brought to general light. As an example, a browsing of the card catalogs at BYU and the Genealogical Society listed the following titles which are undoubtedly of value in seeking emigration information.

1. *LDS Emigrants Guide*, a manuscript.
2. *Danish Immigrants in 1853*, a book.
3. *Emigration Company of Council Point*, a book.
4. *German Speaking Emigration to Utah*, a book.
5. *Handcart Pioneers from Europe 1856-1860*, a book.
6. "History of LDS Emigration from Europe," a film.
7. *Sketches of Prominent Immigrants from Germany, Holland, Italy, Austria, France and Switzerland*, a book.
8. *Deaths of Early Church Members Crossing the Plains*, a manuscript.
10. *First Company of Utah Pioneers*, a book.
11. *First Pioneer Company*, a book.
12. "LDS in Missouri," a film.
13. *Mormon Migration from Scandinavia*, a book.
14. "Pioneers who Came before the Railroad," a film.

These are but a few of the listings and illustrate that a researcher with determination and a good imagination can locate much more information on emigration and immigration than is apparent on the surface.

Ordinance Collections. Ordinance work is an important part of the Gospel of Jesus Christ, and Latter-day Saints believe that certain ordinances are necessary to salvation and exaltation in the Kingdom of Heaven. The ordinances must be performed on earth by the living and they may be performed by proxy for the dead. Many Latter-day Saints have been engaged in this work since the organization of the Church in 1830 and several temples have been constructed wherein the ordinances may be performed.

The ordinances, in their order of reception are:

- (1) Baptism and confirmation.
- (2) Ordination to the priesthood.
- (3) Washings, anointings, and the individual endowment.
- (4) Marriage for time and eternity (sealing, including couples to each other and children to their parents).

It is also a belief of the Latter-day Saints that the dead who did not hear the glorious Gospel of Jesus Christ on earth will have an opportunity to hear it in the spirit world; to receive the sacred ordinances by proxy, and to participate in the plan of salvation, redemption, and exaltation. Apart from biblical evidence, Latter-day Saints accept these concepts as truths of God revealed to His living prophets in this dispensation.

The following chart indicates the dedication dates for the various temples of the Church in this dispensation, with dates listed when ordinance work was begun in each.

The Kirtland Temple was the first built in this dispensation. It was used for preparatory ordinances and for the reception of keys and powers from on high. It fulfilled its purposes and is no longer in the hands of the LDS Church.

The Nauvoo Temple was built and used by the Saints for a short period while they flourished in Illinois. However, these were years of great persecution of the Saints, and after the martyrdom of the Prophet Joseph Smith and his brother Hyrum the Saints were forced to leave Nauvoo. The temple was destroyed after February of 1846. No endowments for

Temple Ordinance Chronology

LOCATION:	DEDICATED	BAPTISM FOR DEAD	ENDOWMENTS (FOR LIVING)	ENDOWMENTS (FOR DEAD)	SEALINGS (COUPLES)	SEALINGS (CHILD TO PARENTS)
Kirtland Temple (For preparatory temple ordinances only)	27 Mar 1834	None	None	None	None	None
Nauvoo		Announced in Aug 1840 First recorded Sep 1840 in Mississippi River	4 May 1842 in room above Joseph Smith's store	None	5 Apr 1841 (Living)	None
Nauvoo Temple	1 May 1846	In feet from 21 Mar 1841	10 Dec 1845 to 7 Feb 1846	None	9 Jan - 7 Feb 1846 for living sealings only, or if one spouse deceased	23 Jan 1846 to 4 Feb 1846
Pre-Endowment House period		None	1849-1855	None	1846 - 1855 for living couples only	None
Endowment House	5 May 1855	31 Aug 1855 to 26 Oct 1876	5 May 1855 to 18 Oct 1884	None	Living & Dead from 1855 to 22 Sept 1889	None
St. George Temple	6 Apr 1877	9 Jan 1877	11 Jan 1877	11 Jan 1877	11 Jan 1877	22 Mar 1877
Logan Temple	17 May 1884	21 May 1884	21 May 1884	21 May 1884	21 May 1884	26 May 1884
Manti Temple	21 May 1888	29 May 1888	30 May 1888	30 May 1888	30 May 1888	8 June 1888
Salt Lake Temple	6 Apr 1893	23 May 1893	24 May 1893	24 May 1893	22 Apr 1893	8 Apr 1893
Hawalei Temple	27 Mar 1919	2 Dec 1919	3 Dec 1919	3 Dec 1919	3 Dec 1919	3 Dec 1919
Albion Temple	28 Aug 1923	6 Mar 1923	29 Aug 1923	29 Aug 1923	29 Aug 1923	29 Aug 1922
Arizona Temple	22 Oct 1927	26 Oct 1927	27 Oct 1927	27 Oct 1927	27 Oct 1927	27 Oct 1927
Idaho Falls Temple	22 Sep 1945	3 Dec 1945	5 Dec 1945	5 Dec 1945	5 Dec 1945	5 Dec 1945
Swiss Temple	11 Sep 1955	1 Oct 1955	16 Sep 1955	16 Sep 1955	16 Sep 1955	16 Sep 1955
Los Angeles Temple	11 Mar 1956	24 Mar 1956	16 Apr 1956	16 Apr 1956	30 Mar 1956	16 Apr 1956
New Zealand Temple	20 Apr 1958	22 Apr 1958	24 Apr 1958	24 Apr 1958	24 Apr 1958	24 Apr 1958
London Temple	7 Sep 1958	10 Sep 1958	10 Sep 1958	16 Sep 1958	10 Sep 1958	10 Sep 1958
Caklan Temple	16 Nov 1964	1 Dec 1964	5 Jan 1965	19 Dec 1964	21 Dec 1964	5 Jan 1965

Temple Ordinance Chronology List

the dead were performed in the Nauvoo Temple. The Endowment House was a special edifice on Temple Square in Salt Lake City used for the performance of sacred ordinances while other temples were being constructed. No endowments for the dead nor sealings of children to parents were performed there and it was torn down in 1889, after fulfilling its purpose. The remainder of the temples shown in the chart are currently in operation, and faithful members of the Church frequent them and attend to sacred ordinance work in their own behalf and in behalf of their deceased relatives.

Temple ordinance records are confidential in nature and may be searched only by permission. The originals remain in the respective temples (except those for Nauvoo and the Endowment House which are in the Salt Lake Temple), but they have been microfilmed, and copies are at the Genealogical Society in Salt Lake City. Baptisms for the living and the dead have been made public and registers indicating time period and call numbers are available at the Genealogical Society. These are as follows:

Baptisms for the Dead

Nauvoo (NV)	1840-1849 indexed	25163 Pts 1-5
Endowment House (EH)	1857-1876 indexed	25165 Pts 1-8
Salt Lake (SL)	1893-1950 indexed	25166 & 25563 210 Pts.
Logan (LG)	1884-1956 indexed	24510 Pts 1-119
Manti (MT)	1888-1957 indexed to 1955	23047 Pts 1-51
St. George (SG)	1877-1956 indexed	23089 Pts 1-49
Hawaiian (HW)	1919-1958 indexed 1950-53	24520 Pts 1-11
Alberta (AL)	1923-1958 indexed to 1957	23081 Pts 1-16
Arizona (AZ)	1927-1957 indexed	23063 Pts 1-29

Baptisms for the Living

Logan	1884-1957 indexed	24513 Pts 1-2
Manti	1888-1956 indexed 1913-1956	23048
St. George	1882-1956	23062 Pts 1-2
Salt Lake Tabernacle font	1907-1960	31303 Pts 1-5
Arizona	1928-1956 indexed	23070

Rebaptisms for Renewal of Covenants in

Logan Temple	1884-1914 indexed	24512
--------------	-------------------	-------

Endowment House Sealings	1883-1889 (Book M)	26165 Pt 22
--------------------------	--------------------	-------------

(A number of pages of this record after page 96 were lost and are missing)

Nauvoo baptisms for the dead from 1840 have been indexed on 3 x 5 inch cards and are in a section of the "Early Church Information File" at the Genealogical Society. The collection is valuable in gaining the names of relatives and their relationship to the proxy who performed the work.

The Church ordinance collections are very valuable in research pertaining to LDS-connected lines of ancestry. Names, relationships, dates and places of birth and dates of death are often included. In many instances members of the Church went to the temples and performed baptismal work for all their known relatives who were deceased. A man and wife, or two other persons, may have spent an entire week performing such ordinances on behalf of their deceased relatives. By searching the original records it is possible to review the work in the order that it was performed by each proxy and gain much valuable genealogical data. In some instances the male proxy performed ordinance work for the husband while the female proxy performed ordinance work for the wife, and the records disclose this husband-and-wife combination. The maiden name of the wife may also be included. Other combinations ranging from children to great-granduncles are evident from the records and the LDS-connected person should utilize these records in *the survey phase of research*.

One must have an idea of the name or names of proxies who might have done the work and the temple of possible attendance in order to locate such ordinance information. Far too many members of the Church neglect these records, either in ignorance or from a preconceived notion that someone else has done this for them. These records were made public only a short time ago and as microfilming is a recent innovation, unless a person was permitted in the archives of the respective temples, such searching was probably not done at an earlier date.

Regarding early ordinances performed on behalf of deceased relatives, it was often the practice to do the baptismal work for all known deceased relatives on a particular excursion, or similarly to perform endowment or sealing work. However, the proxies often performed the baptismal

work, but failed to follow through on the endowment and sealing work, so such information does not appear in the TIB nor in the CRA. The ordinance collections are on a chronological basis and, when indexed, are by the name of the proxy.

Baptismal work performed for the living will be found in the temple ordinance collections only if that person was endowed or sealed. The baptismal record of persons who did not take out their own endowments nor have them performed by others will be found in the regular ward and branch membership records.

The researcher will locate many situations which do not seem to correspond to present-day practices, and when they are located he may have to get advice and counsel from administrative personnel at the Genealogical Society to clarify the problem.

Members of the LDS Church are encouraged to utilize these ordinance records more fully and will find answers to many previously unsolved problems.

Collections of the Church Historian. Since the Church was organized on April 6, 1830, a recorder has been appointed to record and preserve records of and for the Church. Correlation between the Church Historian's Office and the Genealogical Society has resulted in several of the Church Historian's collections being microfilmed and made available to the public for genealogical research.

GUIDE TO THE HISTORIAN'S OFFICE LIBRARY-ARCHIVES⁸

Office of the Church Historian
The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints
Room 301, 47 E. South Temple Street
Salt Lake City, Utah 84111

I. GENERAL

A. HISTORY. On the day The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints was organized, April 6, 1830, at Fayette, Seneca County, New York, Joseph Smith, the Prophet and founder of the restored religion, received a revelation which started with the words: "Behold, there shall be a record kept among you." (D&C 21:1). Subsequent revelations added that a record should be kept of the life,

faith and works of members (D&C 85:2), and that writings about the Church were to be gathered (D&C 123).

A Church Recorder was appointed April 6, 1830, and given the responsibility of keeping the records. In 1838 the additional position of Church Historian was established. These two positions were separate until October 6, 1845, when they were combined under the title "Church Historian and General Church Recorder." Since the days of Nauvoo this important responsibility has been assigned to a member of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. He has been assisted by one or more Assistant Church Historians since 1856. Under the direction of these men the compilation of histories and the accumulation of records has gone forward. In 1904 the position of Librarian was established, the title being changed in 1959 to Librarian-Archivist to more properly designate the duties of the position. In all of the record keeping the Church Historian has been supported by thousands of clerks and secretaries who create records in various Church organizations.

B. HOUSING. During the early years of the Church the records were housed in the residence of the Historian or Recorder or in a convenient office. With the establishment of the Church in Salt Lake Valley, the records were subsequently located in a small building attached to the residence of the Church Historian, George A. Smith, which was located on the south side of South Temple Street, between Main and State Streets. There they remained until the new Church Administration Building was constructed in 1917, at which time the transfer to the third floor of the new building was effected. The Library-Archives was adequately housed in this area until expansion necessitated the acquisition of stack space in the basement of the Administration Building in 1948. Additional expansion became possible in 1964 with the acquisition of a "vault" area at the Industrial Center west of Salt Lake City.

C. SCOPE. The Office of the Church Historian is divided into two major functions—one is to compile histories; the other is to obtain and preserve the records in the Historian's Office Library-Archives. Here are filed all printed works by Church organizations, Church members and others who write about the Church, including friendly and anti-Mormon works; the minute books of all Church organizations, patriarchal blessings, manuscript histories, journals, documents, letters and other materials that contribute to the Church history or a record of its members.

Although the Library-Archives is maintained as a private facility, the materials on file are generally available for use by the earnest researcher. The materials are not available to those whose purpose is to discredit the Church. The primary purpose of the Library archives is to preserve the records of the church so they will be

available for centuries to come. Therefore the use of records, particularly those that are old and in poor condition, will be subject to the decision of the Church Historian.

D. HOURS. The Library-Archives is located in Room 301, 47 E. South Temple, Salt Lake City, Utah, and is open from 8 a.m. to 5 p.m. Monday through Friday. It is closed Saturdays, Sundays, holidays, and during sessions of the General Conferences of the Church in April and October.

II. USE OF MATERIALS

A. SERVICE COUNTER. The Service Counter for the Library-Archives is located in Room 301, 47 E. South Temple. Requests for use of materials should be explained, and the attendants will then indicate the procedure to follow and the assistance that may be given. The Director of Research, who is in charge of the Public Service Section, will be available to assist researchers with their problems.

B. THE RESEARCHER. A researcher desiring use of the Library-Archives for the purpose of writing a paper, article, thesis or book will be referred to an Assistant Church Historian for special permission to use the facilities. The researcher will be expected to:

1. Identify himself.
2. Present a specific, definite and serious purpose for use of materials.
3. Show his trustworthiness, dependability and knowledge of proper handling of valuable records.
4. Sign the register in the Reading Room.
5. Sign for materials and return them in the same state as they were handed to him.
6. Abide by the rules of the Library-Archives.
7. Present his letter of permission to attendants each time he visits the Library-Archives.

C. OTHER VISITORS. Others visiting the Library-Archives who desire to use materials will be expected to:

1. Sign the register.
2. Indicate a specific need for assistance.
3. Handle all materials with care and return them in the same state as they were delivered.
4. Abide by the rules of the Library-Archives.

D. TOPICS RESERVED. When permission has been obtained to use the Library-Archives for research on a specific topic, that topic will be reserved for a period of two years. If additional time is needed to complete the project, the researcher should make special

arrangements with the Historian or Assistant Historian for an additional period of six months or one year.

E. RULES. The following rules are to be observed in the use of records:

1. Library-Archives materials are not permitted to be taken from the Reading Room.
2. Place manuscripts and volumes flat on tables. Do not hold in hand or in lap.
3. Do not lean on, write on, or place paper clips, rubber bands or other objects on records that will damage the records in any way.
4. The use of records in a fragile condition will be subject to special safeguards as the Archivist may deem necessary.
5. Use care in turning pages so pages are not torn or damaged.
6. Records from more than one container or folder should not be used at the same time.
7. Unbound papers must be kept in the same order in which they are delivered to the researcher. If a paper is discovered to be out of order, the researcher should call the fact to the attention of an attendant.
8. Do not fold anew, trace or mark any record.
9. Keep fountain pens or ballpoint pens away from the records. No bottled liquids will be allowed on desks where there are records.
10. The copying of any manuscript material must be approved by the Historian or an Assistant Historian.
11. Microfilms will be delivered to the researcher, but the researcher is expected to put the film on the reading machine, rewind it when finished, turn off the light on the machine, replace the original reel and film into the box, and return the box to the service counter. Report any torn or broken film.
12. Return materials promptly to the service desk when their use is completed.
13. Food is not permitted in the Reading Room.
14. Loud talking and other actions likely to disturb other researchers should be avoided.
15. Do not mark on the microfilm reading machine screen with pencil or pen. A microfilm cannot be corrected by writing on the screen.

III. RECORDS

A. FILING SECTIONS. Records are filed in three filing sections, each of which maintains its own system for filing, and its own separate card catalogs. The types of materials which are filed in each section, policies as to their use, and the separate card catalogs are indicated in the following paragraphs. The only card catalog

available without restrictions to the public is the Library Card Catalog. All others are restricted due to present physical facilities.

B. LIBRARY SECTION. Mormon material is classified in an M200 series in accordance with the *Classification Schedule for Mormon Literature* published by the Utah Library Association. Other books are cataloged under regular Dewey numbers. A three figure Cutter number is used with the Classification Number. The books are filed on closed stacks. To obtain use of printed material a Call Slip must be completed and handed to the attendant.

Types of Records	Use	Card Catalogs
Books Pamphlets Tracts by or about the Church and related subjects. Periodicals Newspapers of Church or- ganizations.	Available without special permission except for rare items or items in poor condition. Microfilms, when available, will be used instead of the originals. Copies may be made provided there will be no damage to the original material.	Library Card Catalog—contains Title, Author and Subject cards. Periodicals Card Catalog—index to subject material in some periodicals.
		Obituary Card Catalog—index to obituaries in the Deseret News and S.L. Tribune. On film at Genealogical Library to 1964.

C. MANUSCRIPT SECTION. Materials in this section are filed by subject or name, alphabetically or numerically. To obtain access to manuscript material a Call Slip must be completed and handed to the attendant.

Types of Records	Use	Card Catalogs
Church Chronology Journal History Manuscript Histories Biographical Sketches Photographs	Available without special permission. Any copying must be approved and checked by the Historian or Asst. Historian	Ch.Chr. Card Catalog J.H. Card Catalog 1830-1900, 1901 to present Mission History Card Catalog—index to some mission histories Ms Card Catalog
Deceased Members Records—1941 to present	Available without special permission. No photo copies furnished.	Filed alphabetically
General Conference Transcriptions —Apr. 1938-present	Available only by permission of the First Presidency or Historian.	Listed on typed list
Journals	Available without restrictions to descendants of writer. Available to others only by permission of family of writer, Historian or Asst. Historian, and copies by others must be approved and checked by the Historian or Asst. Historian.	Ms Card Catalog
Letters Documents Filmstrips Motion Pictures Recordings Tapes	Available only by permission of the Historian or Asst. Historian, who must also approve and check any copying.	Ms Card Catalog Pioneer Card Catalog—filed by name of head of family—lists names, age, company, date of departure and arrival. On film at Genealogical Library.
Maps	Available without special permission.	Ms Card Catalog

Missionary Record	Available on microfilm only. No photo-copies	Missy. Card Catalog —lists name, birth, parentage, mission, etc.
Patriarchal Blessings	Member may obtain his/her blessing. Husband may obtain wife's blessing. Wife may obtain husband's blessing. Parents may obtain children's blessings. Blessings to others copied only upon written consent of person receiving the blessing. Cost—25c for each copy.	Pat.BI.Card Catalog—lists name, birth, parentage, date and place of blessing, lineage, and patriarch. On film at Genealogical Library to 1964.
Statistical Information	Published Statistics—no restrictions. Other Statistics—available only by permission of the Historian.	
Transcript of Record of Members— Form E and Form 42-FP	Available on microfilm only —wards to 1948 and missions to 1951 at Genealogical Library; to 1960 at Historian's Office Library-Archives No photo-copies furnished.	Organization Card Catalog

D. WRITTEN RECORDS SECTION. Materials in this section are filed in numerical sequence. To obtain use of these records inform the attendant of the following:

- a. Type of record desired (Historical Record, auxiliary organization, etc.)
- b. Ward and Stake, or Branch and Mission
- c. Years

Types of Records	Use	Card Catalogs
Minute Books Minute Books Records of Mem- bers Financial Rec- ords L.D.S. School Records	Minutes of general meetings of church members available without restrictions. May be copied without special permission. Minutes of confidential meetings and financial records are available only by permission of the Historian or Asst. Historian. Records of Members are available only on microfilm. No photo-copies furnished.	W.R. Card Catalog Membership Card Catalog—index to names in some British branches and some wards. On film at Genealogical Library.
Liverpool Office Emigration Records	Available on microfilm at Historian's Office Library -Archives and Genealogical Library.	Emigration Card Catalog—filed by name of head of family—Lists names, ages, ship, date of sailing. On film at Genealogical Library.

IV. SERVICE

A. RESEARCH. Limited assistance is available for research in materials which are on file. The Library-Archives reserves the right to limit acceptance of requests for this type of assistance. It is expected that research requiring extensive time will be done by the patron. Typewriters are available for use by researchers.

B. BIRTH CERTIFICATES. Church Birth Certificates will be issued at a charge of one dollar each when such proof is required for legal purposes and when no record is available from the state.

C. PRIESTHOOD AUTHORITY LINES. When personnel time is available, assistance will be given in completing Priesthood Authority Lines for the present office in the Priesthood held by the member.

D. PHOTO-COPIES. Photo-reproduction services are available for providing copies of materials filed in the Library-Archives. The use of copies made from copyrighted materials becomes the responsibility of the patron.

Cost of copies, when ordered at the same time:

Xerox— 1 to 4 exposures	15c each
5 or more exposures	10c each
Enlargements from microfilm (reverse print)	15c each
Microfilm positives	5c foot
Microfilm negatives— 1 to 100 frames	5c frame
over 100 frames	4c frame
Enlargements from microfilm (reverse print)	15c each
Microfilm positives	5c foot
Microfilm negatives— 1 to 100 frames	5c frame
over 100 frames	4c frame
Minimum charge on microfilm negatives or positives	\$1.00

Where a microfilm negative is not already available in the Library-Archives, the individual requesting a microfilm copy of material will be charged for producing a negative in addition to his positive copy, and the negative will remain in the possession of the Library-Archives.



Joseph Fielding Smith
Church Historian and General Church
Recorder

RESEARCH ASSISTANCE for *Genealogical Information* and for the *Completion of Membership Records* will be given by the Office of the Church Historian in accordance with the following instructions:

1. **MEMBERSHIP RECORD**—The Membership Record of each living active member of the Church should be on file in the ward or branch where the member now lives, and should be one of the first sources consulted for genealogical information.
 - a. If the membership record is not on file where the member now lives, the clerk of that ward or branch should send a request to the Presiding Bishopric's Office.
 - b. If the membership record lacks the following information, the ward clerk should send a request to the Historian's Office on Form WD-15:
 1. Blessing record (if the person has not been baptized).
 2. Baptism and Confirmation.

3. Ordination to the Office in the Priesthood currently held.
4. Date set apart for mission and to which mission.

Lack of time and personnel prevents research for entries such as a blessing when the person has been baptized, or for former ordinations.

- c. The date of a patriarchal blessing should be obtained from the copy of the blessing in the member's possession. Members may obtain copies of their patriarchal blessings from the Office of the Church Historian at a cost of twenty-five cents each.
2. *ADDRESS UNKNOWN OF A MEMBER*—If a relative in a family is living and active in the Church, and a member of the family needs genealogical data for this relative but is unable to locate his whereabouts, the Membership Department will check the records upon receipt of a letter or family group sheet accompanied by an explanation of what is needed.
3. *RECORD OF DECEASED MEMBERS*—If the person died after 1941, and there is no endowment record at the Genealogical Society, or if genealogical data is lacking or questionable on the endowment record, the Historian's Office will furnish information that is found in the Records of Deceased Members.
4. *RECORDS OF MEMBERS AND FORM E*—All ward and mission membership records from the earliest records in existence up to 1948 and 1951 respectively have been microfilmed, and copies of each film are available for personal research at the Genealogical Society, 107 So. Main, Salt Lake City, and at its branches. If members do not live in the vicinity of the Society or one of its branches, it is recommended that a relative or friend who does live near one of these libraries search the microfilm.
5. *ENDOWMENT AND SEALING RECORDS*—No endowment or sealing records are available in the Historian's Office. Requests for such information must be handled through the Genealogical Society or the temple recorder.

Several of the collections listed by the Church Historian have been microfilmed and are available at the Genealogical Society. Any of the Church Historian's collections might be of genealogical value in the survey phase, but the following have been proven of special worth and have not yet been made available at the Genealogical Society:

1. Special books, pamphlets, tracts, and periodicals.
2. *Journal History of the Church*.
3. Deceased Members' Records.

4. Journals and diaries.
5. Missionary records.
6. Miscellaneous record and minute books of the wards, branches, and stakes.
7. Records of excommunication.

Certain of these listed are confidential and may be made available only at the discretion of the Church Historian. In most instances this would be done where the information applied to immediate members of the family or other close relatives.

Early Church and Utah Collections. In addition to membership, emigration, ordinance and collections of the Church Historian, there are a host of miscellaneous *early Church and Utah records* which are of special value in the LDS survey. Some of the more important of these are the early Church information file, the index to patriarchal blessings, the obituary index to early Utah newspapers, Utah census records, early Salt Lake City birth and death records, early priesthood quorum records, and others.

An *early Church information file* consisting of over 150,000 cards relating to miscellaneous events and circumstances is available for search at the Genealogical Society. It has been arranged in three sections: (1) miscellaneous early marriages of Utah, Idaho and Wyoming counties; (2) index cards on miscellaneous events and circumstances; (3) index cards of Nauvoo baptisms for the dead. The file is located in the reference section of the Genealogical Society. It was compiled from the following sources:⁹

1. Record of all deaths and marriages published in the *Frontier Guardian* (Kanesville, Iowa), 1849-1852.
2. Inscriptions of Mount Pisgah Monument, Mount Pisgah, Union County, Iowa, giving details of deaths in 1846, 1847, 1848.
3. Inscriptions from tombstones in the old Nauvoo, Illinois, cemetery.
4. Some information taken from early High Priests' and Seventies' quorum records.

5. Springville City, Utah County, Utah, records beginning 20 March 1851.
6. Early Payson City, Utah, records.
7. Early Spanish Fork City, Utah County, Utah, records of members 1851-1864.
8. Early 17th Ward, Salt Lake City, Utah, records 1851-1888.
9. Union, Pottawattamie County, Iowa, branch records 1853-1855.
10. Extracts of reports of births, marriages, and deaths early LDS Church newspapers, as follows:
 - (a) Evening and Morning Star (Independence, Missouri, 1832-1833, then Kirtland, Ohio, 1833-1834).
 - (b) LDS Messenger and Advocate (Kirtland, Ohio, 1834-1836).
 - (c) The Elder's Journal (Kirtland, Ohio, 1837-1838, then Far West, 1838).
 - (d) Times and Seasons Commerce (Nauvoo, Illinois, 1839-1846).
 - (e) The Wasp (Nauvoo, Illinois, 1843).
 - (f) Nauvoo Neighbor (Nauvoo, Illinois, 1843-1845).
11. Index to the first forty volumes of patriarchal blessings.
12. Marriage License Records of several Utah counties. Not all counties are indexed.

The *Patriarchal Blessing* is given as a guide to the recipient in his daily living and in spiritual matters. It discloses his lineage through one of the tribes of Israel, and indicates other blessings as the Spirit may direct the patriarch. The blessing itself is usually of interest only to the recipient, but in research on family lines the genealogical details included in the preamble to the blessings are very valuable. This usually includes the name of the person who receives the blessing, his date and place of birth and his parentage. Some persons have received more than one blessing, and females are often listed by their married names. At an early period of the Church, the Patriarch to the Church traveled in England giving blessings to various persons. These often recorded the exact place of birth (small hamlet or parish), whereas those given in the United States may have given the name of a larger city near the actual place of birth.

All patriarchs have been instructed to record each patriarchal blessing given and when a particular record book has been filled it is sent to the Church Historian's Office. Index cards have been made for such blessings recorded and received by the Church Historian and these have been microfilmed and are available for search at the Genealogical Society and through branch libraries. The card index and the actual blessings remain in the custody of the Church Historian.

Members who lose their copy of their blessing may obtain another copy for a small charge. A husband may obtain a copy of his wife's blessing, and a wife a copy of her husband's; parents may obtain copies of their children's blessings. Children must produce written authority from their parents to receive a copy of their parents' blessings. A person can obtain a copy of his brother's or sister's blessings only upon written permission from that brother or sister. Individuals may read the blessings of more distant relatives with the permission of the Church Historian.¹⁰

An *obituary index* was constructed under the direction of the Church Historian from the *Deseret News* (first published 15 June, 1850) and the *Salt Lake Tribune* (first published 15 April, 1871). The card index has been microfilmed and is available at the Genealogical Society. The index lists the name of the deceased, date of death, name of the newspaper and the page where the reference is found. Sometimes additional information is given; at times the reference material does not correspond to the actual obituary. The card index is maintained at the Church Historian's Office, but with microfilming there is little need to consult the cards. The microfilm copy at the Genealogical Society represents the period 1850-1963, call number 42088 Pts 1-37.

The Genealogical Society does not have copies of the *Salt Lake Tribune*, but does have microfilmed copies of the *Deseret News* (including the weekly "Church News Section"). The University of Utah and Brigham Young University have excellent collections of newspapers of the Utah area (including the *Salt Lake Tribune*), and their files are open to

the public. Copies of the *Deseret News* and the *Salt Lake Tribune* are also maintained by their respective publishers.

American Newspapers by Gregory (as mentioned in chapter six, on reference materials) is a union list of newspapers which have been published in the United States and Canada for the period 1820-1936 and is a valuable tool in locating extant newspapers. A key is provided in the work showing which copies are extant and their repositories. Its Dewey Decimal reference number is Ref. 070.016 Am 35n. The Genealogical Research Technology Laboratory at BYU has a list of newspapers available at Brigham Young University and at the University of Utah. It also has a list of those which might be purchased in microfilm form from Universal Microfilming Corporation, 141 Pierpont Avenue, Salt Lake City, Utah. This collection is quite extensive and includes items other than newspapers.

Many persons overlook the value of an obituary as a genealogical source because of its secondary nature. However, it can provide valuable clues to events and circumstances which might not be available elsewhere. Experience has shown that *emigration facts*, *places of birth*, and *places of residence* are often listed in an obituary notice. It is not uncommon to determine from an obituary the names of descendants or relatives who are living and who might provide additional survey material. The obituaries of both the wife and the husband provide a much clearer picture of family information than does either one individually. The researcher should attempt to obtain obituaries of each family member who is deceased, and by correlating information from each of them he might determine genealogical facts and clues which cannot be obtained elsewhere.

Early Utah census records from 1850 and early gazetteers and directories are excellent sources of information. The 1880 federal census includes the *birthplace of parents* and can be very valuable as a lead to further original materials.

Early priesthood quorum records have been preserved in printed form and some of these are available for search at the Genealogical Society.

Miscellaneous Collections. Other miscellaneous records exist which are of value to the LDS survey and the good researcher will use his imagination and knowledge at the card catalog to locate such references. The following works will give the researcher an idea of the type of materials extant:

Historical publications pertaining to early Utah and Mormon history. Several works of Andrew Jensen are valuable, including *The Historical Record* and *Church Chronology*. His *LDS Biographical Encyclopedia* is excellent for information on Church officials and leaders. The Brigham Young University and the University of Utah libraries also have excellent collections of these materials. *Heart Throbs of the West* by Kate B. Carter, *Daughters of Utah Pioneers Magazine*, the *Utah Historical and Genealogical Magazine*, and many others fall into this category.

Many privately published *biographical collections and genealogical works* which pertain directly to early LDS Church members are extant and should be searched.

A good collection of *Utah cemetery records* has been filed at the Genealogical Society and can assist in the survey phase of research.

¹*Genealogical Instruction Manual* (1962 edition), op. cit., sec. 13, p. 2.

²Andrew Jensen, *Encyclopedic History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints* (Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret News Publishing Co., 1941.)

³David E. Gardner et al., *A Basic Course in Genealogy* (Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft Inc., 1958), I, 281.

⁴*Genealogical Society Observer*, II, No. 7 (July, 1966), pp. 7-8.

⁵*Genealogical Instruction Manual* (1962 edition), op. cit., sec. 13, pp. 3-8.

⁶Kate B. Carter (ed.), *Daughters of Utah Pioneers Magazine* (Salt Lake City, Utah: Daughters of Utah Pioneers), vols 1947, 1948, 1949, 1950.

⁷Meredith B. Colket, Jr. and Frank E. Bridgers, *Guide to Records in the National Archives* (Washington: The National Archives and Records Service, 1964).

⁸*Guide to the Historian's Office Library Archives* (Salt Lake City, Utah, 1966), a brochure.

⁹*Genealogical Instruction Manual* (1962 edition), op. cit., sec. 13, pp. 13-15.

¹⁰*Ibid.*, p. 8.



Part IV

THE RESEARCH PHASE



Chapter 10

ORIGINAL RECORDS AND SOURCES

Through the general survey and the special LDS survey, the researcher gathers such information as has already been published or presented on a particular genealogical problem. He should analyze and evaluate the genealogical facts and decide whether the information is correct or incorrect. If sufficient evidence of the proper kind and quality supports the facts, the researcher may decide that a genealogical truth has been established—that an individual was in reality born on a particular date, in a particular place, of certain parentage, etc. However, if there is conflicting information, or if there is insufficient evidence to support a particular proposition, it is necessary to conduct further research. The conflicting data must be reconciled, that which is incorrect eliminated and correct facts obtained.

In the *research phase* the genealogist investigates records and sources which are considered original or primary in nature and content and which are credited with providing the best possible genealogical fact. In addition to oral testimony which may have had its origin in personal knowledge, there are several categories of documentary testimony which are referred to as the *original records and sources*. These are *private*, *public* and *official* records which were created through the normal activities of our social and economic lives.

There is no substitute for research into original records and sources. Far too much time is spent in rehashing what is supposed or what is assumed and far too little time is spent digging into the originals where the actual facts are to be found. Experience has shown that investigation into original records will give an insight into a particular prob-

lem that nothing else will bring, short of speaking with the participants themselves. Often it is impossible to gain direct evidence toward the solution of a genealogical problem, but after a careful search in the original records—whether census, probate, land or some other group—the researcher is able to reach sound conclusions that he would not otherwise be able to do. Perhaps there is no direct evidence available as to the parentage of a certain ancestor, but after the researcher has read probates of several potential parents, he may be able to reach the proper conclusions. He may not have direct evidence to support a family connection, but after searching original census records he may be able to reconstruct a family group situation which could not otherwise be done. *The genealogist will find no substitute for searching original records* to get the feel of the “time and place” pertaining to a particular genealogical problem.

Each genealogical problem is different in some respect, and it is unwise to say that one record is better than another. It is also impossible to lay down one sequence of search which will prove successful in every genealogical situation. In one case a census search may be the best while in another a search of probate records should be the order of the day. In some instances a military record might provide the answer required, while in another, church records may hold the solution. The researcher must study each geographical region of interest to his problem and must learn of its genealogical peculiarities if he is to be successful. He must determine the availability of extant records and study them, including their *time period, genealogical content and value*. Genealogically speaking, each country and certain regions within countries differ from others and require special research technique.

Many records exist which can be of value to the genealogist, but which might be called by different names in various regions and countries. The authors recently made a survey of public and official records on file at the LDS Genealogical Society at Salt Lake City and determined that hundreds of differently named records and documents were on file, but that all of them could be logically grouped

under a dozen or so headings. The survey was conducted in records of English speaking countries but record counterparts exist in other countries even though they might be known by different names. The survey findings resulted in a grouping under the following ten categories:

1. Cemetery-sextons' records
2. Census-mortality records
3. Church records
4. Court-legislative records
5. Emigration-immigration records
6. Land-property records
7. Military-naval records
8. Probate-guardianship records
9. Social-commercial records
10. Vital records

Several different documents and proceedings were noted in the various record groups and a list of the more important follows:

CEMETERY-SEXTONS' RECORDS

- Burials
- Epitaphs
- Inscriptions
 - Gravestone
 - Headstone
 - Monumental
 - Tombstone
- Memorials-obituaries
- Mortician-mortuary records
- Mausoleum records
- Plot layout and ownership records

CENSUS-MORTALITY RECORDS

- Church enumerations
- Local enumerations
- National enumerations
- State enumerations
- Veterans schedules

CHURCH RECORDS

- Births
 - Baptisms
 - Christenings
 - Confirmations

- Deaths
 - Burials
 - Funerals
 - Memorials
- Marriages
 - Allegations
 - Annulments
 - Applications
 - Banns
 - Certificates
 - Cohabitations
 - Contracts
 - Divorces (see court records)
 - Dower rights (see land records)
 - Intentions
 - Licenses
 - Registers
 - Returns
- Membership
 - Clergy & Minister statistics
 - Communion lists
 - Disciplinary proceedings
 - Meeting statistics
 - Minutes

Registers
 Sessional records
 Vestry books

COURT-LEGISLATIVE RECORDS

Proceedings of special
 genealogical value
 Alias
 Alien
 Appeals
 Apprenticeship
 Chancery
 Citizenship
 Civil
 Criminal
 Divorce
 Equity
 Estray
 Foreclosure
 Guardianship
 Incorporation
 Juror
 Land dispute
 Law and equity
 Lunacy
 Misdemeanor
 Naturalization
 Passport
 Probate

Documents and records

Affidavits
 Attestations
 Calendars
 Case files
 Day books
 Declarations
 Decrees
 Depositions
 Dockets
 Grants
 Indexes
 Journals
 Judgments
 Justice books
 Order books
 Plea books
 Recognizance books
 Orders
 Sales bills
 Subpoenas
 Summonses
 Witness books
 Writs

EMIGRATION-IMMIGRATION RECORDS

Affidavits
 Applications
 Attestations

Certificates
 Customs lists
 Customs lists of aliens
 Oaths and declarations
 Arrivals
 Debarkation lists
 Embarkation lists
 Maps
 Passenger lists
 Refugee records
 Shipping lists

LAND-PROPERTY RECORDS

Proceedings of special
 genealogical value
 Dower rights
 General Land Office
 Homestead
 Inheritance
 Land claims and causes
 Lotteries
 Pre-emption rights
 Proprietor
 Powers of attorney
 Public domain
 Rateables
 Resales
 Sales
 Settlement
 Slave
 State land
 Taxables
 Tithables
 Transfers
 Warrants

Documents and records

Abstracts
 Agreements
 Applications
 Assessment rolls
 Certificates
 Contracts
 Deeds
 Digests
 Entry books
 Fee books
 Grants
 Indentures
 Leases
 Licenses
 Lot books
 Mortgages
 Patents
 Permits
 Plat books
 Quit rent rolls
 Receivers receipts

- Rent rolls
- Script
- Surveys
- Tax records
- Warrants

MILITARY-NAVAL RECORDS

- Battles and wars
- Branches of service
- Installations and organizations
- Militia
- Patriotic societies
- Personnel
 - Pension records and proceedings
 - Abstracts
 - Affidavits
 - Applications
 - Attestations
 - Claims
 - Depositions
 - Indexes
 - Lists
 - Letters
 - Rejections
 - Rolls
 - Waivers
 - Warrants
 - Service files and proceedings
 - Accounts and vouchers
 - Discharge and separation papers
 - Disciplinary actions
 - Enlistment papers
 - Induction papers
 - Medical records
 - Muster rolls, lists, and rosters
 - Orders, citations and medals
- Veterans records and proceedings
 - Death, grave-registration, and burial records
 - Disability claims and proceedings
 - Indigent soldier claims and proceedings
- Regular Army records
- Selective Service records
- Veterans organizations records

PROBATE-GUARDIANSHIP RECORDS

- Proceedings of special genealogical value
 - Adoption
 - Guardianship
 - Probate
- Courts of probate interest
 - Chancery
 - Circuit
 - Common Pleas
 - District
 - Ordinary

- Orphans
- Probate
- Quarter Sessions
- Surrogate

Documents and records

- Accounts and settlements
- Affidavits
- Appointments
- Appraisals
- Bonds
- Caveats
- Codicils
- Defaulters lists
- Distributions
- Divisions
- Inventories
- Letters
- Partitions
- Petitions
- Renunciations
- Returns
- Sales
- Settlements
- Support bills
- Testaments
- Vouchers
- Wills

SOCIAL-COMMERCIAL RECORDS

- Archives, library and societies collections
- Business, employment and insurance records
- Election and voting records
- Patriotic societies' records
- School and university records
- Social security records (Confidential)
- Social and fraternal organizations records

VITAL RECORDS

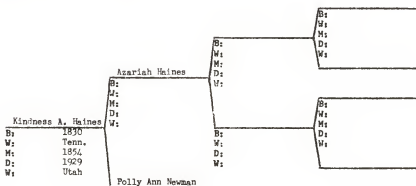
- Births
 - Certificates
 - Register entries
- Deaths
 - Certificates
 - Register entries
- Marriages
 - Applications
 - Bonds
 - Certificates
 - Contracts
 - Intentions
 - Licenses
 - Registers
 - Returns

Beginning U. S. Research. Following is an outline of research methods and procedures for a typical United States genealogical problem. It is recognized that every possible step and conclusion cannot be discussed in such an approach, but the more important procedures and sources are considered.

I. Family and Home Sources

Gain basic genealogical information from oral testimony and family tradition in the home and by searching for documentary testimony pertaining to the problem of interest (see Chapter 8 for typical documents found in the home). Record the information gathered in pedigree and family group form and initiate a good notekeeping system to record future findings (see Chapter 7 for hints on notekeeping).

On a particular family line, facts as in the accompanying chart might be gained from such searches.



PEDIGREE Example—Haines Family

II. Special LDS Sources

Determine the status of temple ordinance work which has been performed for the persons of interest by checking each name through the Temple Records Index Bureau and the Church Records Archives collections (see Chapter 8 for detailed information on these collections). Also determine

in these sources which other persons have submitted information on the lines of interest to you. Many additional genealogical facts might be found in these two collections, regardless of the time period or the origin of the family involved.

The Temple Records Index Bureau adds facts of birth, marriage, and death for Kindness Ann Haines as well as giving further information on her parentage. Cards pertaining to her parentage are located and they also give further valuable facts.

INDEX CARD TO <i>21. Apr</i>		TEMPLE RECORDS	
No	No	Book	Page
Name in full	<i>Harriet Ogden</i>		
When born	<i>21 Apr 1860</i>		
Where born	<i>Windsor, N. H.</i>		
When died	<i>16 Mar 1923</i>		
Father	<i>William Ogden</i>		
Mother	<i>Lucy Ann Hays</i>		
When married	<i>to William Haines</i>		
Instance of	<i>Ann W. Haines</i>	Rel.	<i>to</i>
When baptized	<i>21 May 1860</i>	Was Endowed	<i>11 May 1884</i>
Sealed Wife	Husband	To	Parents
References	<i>Relatives</i>		

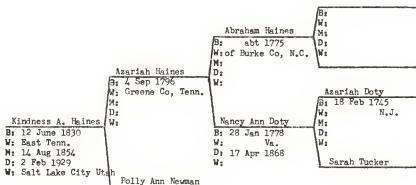
INDEX CARD TO <i>Salt Lake</i>		TEMPLE RECORDS	
No	No	Book	Page
Name in full	<i>Wolfe, Mary</i>		
When born	<i>25 June 1825</i>		
Where born	<i>Windsor</i>		
When died	<i>11 Apr 1868</i>		
Father	<i>William Wolfe</i>		
Mother	<i>Lucy Ann Hays</i>		
When married	<i>to William Haines</i>		
Instance of	<i>Ann W. Haines</i>	Rel.	<i>to</i>
When baptized	<i>21 May 1860</i>	Was Endowed	<i>2 Oct 1877</i>
Sealed Wife	Husband	To	Parents
References			

INDEX CARD TO		TEMPLE RECORDS	
No.	No.	Book	Page
Name in full <u>Haines, Abraham</u>			
When born		<u>abt 1775</u>	
Where born		<u>Burke Co., N.C.</u>	
When died			
Father			
Mother			
When married		to <u>Nancy Doty</u>	
Instance of		Rel. <u>S. Jones</u>	
When baptized		<u>13 Dec 1736</u>	
Sealed Wife		Wife <u>Endowed 14 Jan 1754</u>	
Husband		To	
Sealed Wife		Parrots	
References			

INDEX CARD TO		TEMPLE RECORDS	
No.	No.	Book	Page
Name in full <u>Doty, Azariah</u>			
When born		<u>18 Feb 1745</u>	
Where born		<u>Piscataway, Middlesex, N.J.</u>	
When died			
Father		<u>Isaac Doty</u>	
Mother		<u>Miss Ryke</u>	
When married		to <u>Sarah Tucker</u>	
Instance of		Rel. <u>Rel</u>	
When baptized		<u>20 Oct 1931</u>	
Sealed Wife		Wife <u>Endowed 19 Nov 1931</u>	
Husband		To	
Sealed Wife		Parrots	
References			

Examples of TIB Cards—Various Persons

Additional facts and clues are gained from the Temple Records Index Bureau, which also offers clues for the use of other sources.



Pedigree Example—Haines Family

Information found in the Temple Records Index Bureau indicated that further facts might be obtained from the Church Records Archives; including the names and addresses of persons who submitted information on the same lines. In addition, sources used by those persons might be listed and serve as a valuable source of further information. Use of other Church Records Archives collections and of the Pedigree Referral Service would be in order at this point (see Chapter 8 for facts about Pedigree Referral Service).

III. Printed Secondary Sources

Determine the extent of research others have performed and published on the lines of interest by searching biographies, genealogies, pedigrees, histories, and periodical literature. Using the surname target approach (see Chapter 8) one might gain further valuable information pertaining to the lines of interest.

THE DOTY-DOTEN FAMILY.

3359. AZARIAH DOTY, son Isaac Doty and———Reyno, b. prob. near Piscataway, N. J., Feb. 18, 1745 m. prob. in Virginia about 1772, Sarah Tucker, b. about 1755. She d. Greene Co., Tenn., March 6, 1839, he d. there June 7, 1851, aged over 106 years.

He emigrated with his brother, John Doty, about 1766-1770, to Virginia and later to Burke County, N. C. He served during the Revolution under General Marion. About 1782 or soon after, he removed to Greene County, Tenn., and settled on a farm now in the town of Newmansville, and which was later occupied by his son, Ephraim Doty, with his son and grandson. He was possessed of great force of character and nerve, and was a prominent and influential citizen in his county.

Children:

3507. i. SUSANNAH, b. prob. Va., Dec. 2, 1774; m., 1st, Joseph Lane; m., 2d, Anthony Hackett. By 1st husb. had a dau., and by 2d, a son and 2 daus.

3508. ii. NANCY, b. prob. Va., Jan. 28, 1778; m. Abraham Haynes. She d. April 17, 1868. They had 8 chil., 4 sons and 4 daus.
3509. iii. ISAAC, b. Burke Co., N. C., Jan. 28, 1780.
3510. iv. ENOCH, b. Greene Co., Tenn., Oct. 25, 1783.
3511. v. MARY, b. Greene Co., Oct. 25, 1785; m. Joseph Dunkin. She d. Sept 11, 1875; no chil.
3512. vi. SARAH, b. Greene Co., March 27, 1788; m. John Meollum. She d. Jan 31, 1852. They had 6 chil., a son and 5 daus.
3513. vii. HANNAH, b. Greene Co., July 5, 1791; m. Jonathan Jests. They removed early to Lanesville, Ky.
3514. viii. EPHRAIM, b. Greene Co., Aug. 22, 1795.
3515. ix. JESSE, b. Greene Co., Feb 22, 1798.

Family History Example—Doty Family

Much information might be gained from the family history noted above, and it might supply clues to other publications.

It must be recognized that the information thus far obtained is subject to error because of the secondary nature of the sources searched. In some instances the facts might be quite reliable, but in others they are in conflict with established facts and are subject to further scrutiny. Considerable time might yet be spent in the sources mentioned above with good results, but finally the researcher must go to the original records for the solution to his problems.

IV. Primary Sources

Gain new genealogical facts by defining specific research objectives and by searching original records in each jurisdiction (town, county, and state) pertinent to the pedigree problem.

The accompanying selected original records pertain to the Haines-Doty problem being discussed, and these should give a general idea of the value of such records in United States genealogy.

A. Death certificate of Kindness Ann Haines:

STATE OF UTAH—DEATH CERTIFICATE

State Board of Health File No. 230

City Salt Lake

County Salt Lake City No. I.D.S. Hospital St. 321

Full Name Kindness Badger

Residence, No. Mill Creek Utah

(USUAL PLACE OF ABODE)

Residence in city or town where death occurred yrs. mon. 5 da. How long in U. S. if of foreign birth? yrs. mon. da.

PERSONAL AND STATISTICAL PARTICULARS

1. COLOR OR RACE: White 2. SINGLE, MARRIED, WIDOWED OR DIVORCED: Widowed

3. MARRIED, WIDOWED, OR DIVORCED: MARRIED OF JOHN C. BADGER

4. DATE OF BIRTH: June 12th 1830

5. AGE: 98 yrs 7 mos 20 da. If less than 1 day, hrs. min.

6. OCCUPATION OF DECEASED: Trade, profession, or service: At Home

7. General nature of industry, business, or establishment in which employed (or employer):

8. Name of Employer: Unknown

9. BIRTHPLACE (City or town, State or Country): Tennessee

10. NAME OF FATHER: Asariah Haines

11. BIRTHPLACE OF FATHER (State or Country): Unknown

12. MAIDEN NAME OF MOTHER: Unknown

13. BIRTHPLACE OF MOTHER (State or Country): Unknown

14. Informant: Mrs. Asariah Haines

Address: 321 N. Christy St. Salt Lake

15. DATE OF DEATH: Feb. 2 1929

16. DATE OF DEATH: Feb. 2 1929

17. I HEREBY CERTIFY, That I attended deceased from 1-25-1929 to 2-2-1929 and that I last saw her alive on 2-2-1929 and that death occurred on the date stated above.

The CAUSE DEATH was as follows: Hypertensive pneumonia

Contributory: Ischemic heart disease

18. Where was disease contracted? if not at place of death? 40 Date of 1-25-1929

Did an operation precede death? 40

Was there an autopsy? 1929

What test confirmed diagnosis? 1929

(Signed) J. E. Haines

19. Name the DISEASE CAUSING DEATH, or, in death from VIOLENT DEATHS state (1) MEANS AND NATURE OF INJURY; and (2) whether ACCIDENTAL, SUICIDAL OR HOMICIDAL. (See reverse side for instructions.)

20. PLACE OF BURIAL, CREMATION, OR INTERMENT: Mill Creek, Utah

DATE OF BURIAL: Feb. 6 1929

21. UNDERTAKER: Deseret Mortuary Co. Salt Lake

22. REGISTERED NUMBER: 3-218

23. No. of Burial or Removal Permit: 3-218

READ CAREFULLY INSTRUCTIONS ON BACK OF CERTIFICATE

Death Certificate of Kindness Ann Haines

B. Obituary notice of Kindness Ann Haines:

(Deseret News—2 Feb 1929—Microfilm roll 6507 F Utah S18k Pt 116)

Mrs. Kindness Badger dies in Salt Lake Hospital. Mrs. Kindness A. Badger, 99, of Mill Creek, died Saturday in a local hospital. She was born in Green county, Tennessee, June 12, 1830, joined the Church in 1844 and was a member of the first company which left Nauvoo westward. She remained in Winter Quarters two years and came to Salt Lake in James C. Snow's company in 1852. She married John C. Badger and was well known in the southern part of the State. She was always an active Church worker. Surviving are a son, Nathan B. Badger, Hinckley, Utah and two daughters, Mrs. Kindness A. Wright, Mill Creek, and Mrs. Rebecca A. Russell, Hurricane, Utah. There are a large number of grandchildren and great-grandchildren surviving. Funeral services will be announced.

C. Cemetery records pertaining to the family:



Tombstone Inscriptions Haines and Doty Family

D. Original census records pertaining to the counties of interest disclose that Azariah Doty is 105 years of age in 1850 and living with his grandson William:

(Greene County, Tennessee 1850 Census—Microfilm 5561 Pt 3)

No. 1908	William C. Doty	34 M	Farmer	\$1000	Tenn.
	Malvina	30 F			Tenn.
	Sarah J.	2 F			Tenn.
	Ephraim Doty	55 M			Tenn.
	Sarah	56 F			Tenn.
	AZARIAH DOTY	105 M	Farmer (blind)		New Jersey

Nancy Ann Doty Haines is listed in the same enumeration in the household of her son-in-law:

No. 1958	Henry J.G. Robertson	35 M	Merchant	\$2500	Tenn.
	Mary A.	37 F			Tenn.
	James D.	13 M			Tenn.
	John D.	11 M			Tenn.

Joseph M.	9 M	Tenn.
NANCY HAINES	73 F	Tenn.

Azariah Haines, son of Nancy listed above, is located in Grant County, Indiana in 1850 with his third wife and their children:

(Grant County, Indiana 1850 Census—Microfilm 2598 Pt 3)

No. 81-81	Azariah Hanes	53 M	Farmer	\$500	Tenn.
	Elizabeth	46 F			Ind.
	Susan	16 F			Ohio
	David M.	13 M			Ohio
	Sally Anne	12 F			Ohio
	Reuel B.	11 M			Ohio
	Alexander	3 M			Ill.
	Mary Jane	1 F			Ohio

E. Probate, Land, Military, Court and other original records also might reveal facts pertinent to the problem.

State of North Carolina

Secretary of State's Office 19th March 1827.

I William Hill Secretary of State in and for the State aforesaid, do hereby Certify that it appears from the musterrolls of the Continental Line of this State, that Isaac Doty a Serg^t in Capt^s Sparters Company of the 10th Regiment was mustered or enlisted in 1782 for the term of 18 months, that nothing more is said of him on said rolls, it is therefore believed he served the term for which he enlisted
Given under my hand this
19th March 1827.

W. Hill

Military—Letter

2544
Wm. Hill
Isaac Doty
 who was a Serg^t in the State of Tennessee
 y Captains *Sparters* in the Company commanded
 by Colonel *Sparters* in the Regiment commanded
 then, for the term of *18 months* commencing
 from *1782* to *1784*
 Recorded on the Roll of *Red Bank*
 at the rate of *10¢* per month, &
1000 per *1000* day of *1000*
 Certificate of Pension issued the *5th of March*
1827 and sent to the *State*
of Tennessee
 Amount to the *State of Tennessee*
 Received after making
2544-26
 Received by *Isaac Doty*
 Paid to *Isaac Doty*
2544-26

Military—Pension Roll Document

hundred and eighteen, and that he has not received that sum by gift sale sale or in any way or in any whatever disposed of his property or any part thereof with intent thereby to diminish the same so as to bring himself within the provisions of the Act of Congress of the United States of America passed on the fourteenth day of March 1878 and on or about the first day of May 1880 made for the benefit of certain persons engaged in the Land and Naval service of the United States of America in the Revolutionary war and that he has not himself nor has any one in trust for him either directly or indirectly any property, security, or trade debt or due of any kind or description whatever, nor has he any income whatever, save what is contained and embraced in the following schedule which contains what is a true and perfect inventory of all the estate of the said James H. H. H., he further states upon his oath aforesaid, that he has a wife living about fifty eight years of age, and is very infirm and weak, he also states that he has had eleven children, of which number there is eight living and perhaps nine but about the latter cannot speak with certainty out of this number there are four females living, he further states that there are five of his children living with him who are daughters the eldest about eighteen and the youngest about thirteen years of age

Schedule

One small horse worth about — \$15—
 One small heifer worth about — \$5—
 Some little household furniture
 not exceeding — — — \$10—

Vital Records. Vital statistics registration in the United States is relatively modern and, with no program of national registration, it has been pretty well left to the states (and Canadian provinces) for implementation and operation.

Registration on a town basis began quite early in New England and in certain large metropolitan cities in other places but was not undertaken in many areas until the 20th century. About 60 per cent of the early town vital records for Massachusetts have been published and are in larger libraries across the United States. These records cover a period "early to 1850," and were consolidated from town, church, cemetery, and private family records. For the larger metropolitan cities it is necessary to correspond with city officials to determine when registration began and the particulars of gaining facts from the records.

Registration began on a county basis in many parts of the United States and in some provinces of Canada in the early 1800's, but the authors are not aware of any publication which outlines each county or province's story in detail. It is a matter of corresponding with the county clerk or jurisdictional authority to determine extant records and their availability. Programs were definitely under way in many counties by 1850-1880, and *Guides to Public and Vital Records* as completed by the Historical Records Survey Project of the Works Progress Administration will give specific information on county registration.

The registration of marriages usually began with the organization of the county and hence marriage records are available for an earlier date than those for births and deaths. Some counties do not permit searching of the original records by other than authorized personnel, and fees are charged for copies obtained. In other counties the searcher is permitted to handle the records himself and copy any data of interest. In 1960, the State of Illinois passed legislation restricting county vital records and establishing fees for such information. Other states are following this pattern.

Registration on a state basis began as early as 1848 for New Jersey and as late as 1917 for some of the southwestern

states. There is a valuable guide to state registration of vital statistics and all interested researchers should obtain copies as reference tools. *Public Health Service Publications "630A-1, 630B, and 630C"* as revised on January, 1964, give statistics on where to write for birth and death records, marriage records, and divorce records. Copies of these publications are for sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402, at 15 cents a copy. The publication gives such information as the name of the place, the cost of a full-or short-form copy, the address of the vital statistics office, and remarks as to when the records began or where to write for earlier information.

The researcher should analyze his pedigree problem and define specific objectives in relation to obtaining vital records, then attempt to obtain such documents from the state office of registration if the event occurred at the appropriate time. However, if registration on a state basis was not in effect he should correspond with the county or town (city) jurisdiction for such information.

After exhausting vital record possibilities the researcher should move to other records and sources to confirm information or obtain additional facts.

Church Records. This record group probably ranks next to vital records in its importance, though this ranking is somewhat dependent on the deceased's denomination to which one belonged and on its program of record keeping. Church records of special genealogical value concern themselves with birth, baptism, christening or confirmation; deaths, burials, or funerals; marriages, banns, returns or certificates; and membership statistics. This last group has to do with disciplinary proceedings, meetings, minutes, or other miscellaneous actions. The records vary considerably in their content and availability and the genealogist must study his particular area of interest to determine what might be gained from such records.

The United States has been a melting-pot of nationalities and no national or state church has been in existence. This

makes the genealogist's job a little harder in relation to the use of church records and suggests that the researcher must study and determine national origins to gain the most from such records. In Colonial America, the Congregational Church was predominant in New England with its Puritan and Separatist adherents, while the Anglican Church was the most prevalent in Virginia and South Carolina. The middle colonies had a mixture of religious denominations just as their national origin would imply. The Reformed Church, including Dutch, Lutheran, and German elements, was strong there as was the Presbyterian movement from the Scottish element. Pietist elements, such as the Mennonites, Dunkards, Quakers, Moravians, Huguenots and several others, had their influence in the middle colonies and moved into the south and western parts of the United States.

In short, *the story of church records in the United States is the story of national origins, and the content of records varies with the practices of the particular congregations or groups.* As an example, the Baptists did not record nor practice infant baptism; hence, very few births and no christenings will be located in their records. A member had to profess the faith before being baptized. In the Dutch Reformed Church records and in the Catholic records one might find the birth and christening date with names of sponsors, godparents, and others who could be close relatives. The Quakers practiced no infant baptism, but excellent birth, marriage, and death information is to be found in their records. The marriage record included the names of all who witnessed the marriage.

Inventories of Church Archives for several denominations in the United States were completed by the Historical Records Survey Project, Works Progress Administration, in the 1930's, and these are excellent sources of church record repositories. In many instances the records are still in the church's possession or in the hands of its ministers or their descendants or they may have been transferred to local or state libraries.

The reader is referred to chapter 6 for special reference works on church records. One should not expect miracles in

United States church records, but should approach them and make good use of them when they are extant. Information about the affiliation of one's ancestor can often be determined from the following:

- (1) Family information, tradition, or present family affiliation.
- (2) Biographies and histories, especially county histories.
- (3) In later years, obituaries, death certificates, mortician's records, hospital records, and employment records.
- (4) Area of residence, or by studying known associates.
- (5) Nationality or country of origin.

Cemetery-Sextons' Records. The genealogical value of this record group is apparent, though these records are not often utilized to their fullest extent. In the broadest sense, cemetery and sextons' records include information on burials and interments, whether from a headstone, gravestone, tombstone, monument, placard or from plot ownership records, up-keep records or related documents in possession of the sexton or his counterpart.

Memorials, obituaries, and epitaphs are akin to this record group and may yield valuable genealogical facts to assist the researcher. The information gained may not be of the highest quality in every respect, but it deserves early investigation because of the nature of the data to be found.

As the researcher analyzes his genealogical problem, he should consider each jurisdiction pertinent to the problem, i.e., the home, church, town, township, city, county, state or even the nation, and should investigate the possibility of cemetery and sextons' records being available. Clues on the research problem may already be present from death certificates, obituary notices and other family sources which will assist in determining the location of cemeteries. These documents often list the name of the cemetery where the individual was buried. Inquiry at the jurisdiction of interest should bring detail on the actual location of the cemetery. Local morticians are aware of cemeteries in use and inquiry

directed to old-timers in a particular locality will usually bring necessary information on older cemeteries. Sometimes local people have taken it upon themselves to copy cemetery information and these facts can be located through research in the locality of interest.

Published information on cemeteries and related sextons' records should be searched first as these might contain pertinent information. However, it may be necessary to visit the burial place in person or have an agent do so to gain the maximum information available. The Daughters of the American Revolution have done a tremendous job in gathering, copying and publishing data about cemeteries and burial grounds. Their effort in placing monuments and headstones on veterans' graves is a laudable work.

The DAR has published much cemetery information in their own quarterly magazine and much has been published in other quarterly and historical magazines. In a like manner, the LDS Church has initiated several programs to copy headstone and cemetery information. Many volumes of such works are presently on the shelves of the Genealogical Society in Salt Lake City and the program has covered a broad area in the United States and Canada. Other individuals and organizations have published cemetery and burial information which can be found at the Genealogical Society and other repositories.

The competent genealogist will not only investigate published cemetery and sextons' records, but will visit the actual burial place in person or have his agent do so to gain the maximum amount of information. Few sextons' records have been published and in most instances it is necessary to search these in person. Not all cemeteries have sextons nor sextons' records, though many of the larger metropolitan cemeteries do. The sextons' records often include index cards showing burial facts with names and addresses of relatives, burial plot location, ownership documents and documents referring to up-keep which include the names and addresses of relatives.

When cemetery or sextons' records are copied and or-

ganized for publishing, some of the genealogical value may be destroyed. This is particularly true when all names from a cemetery are copied and then arranged alphabetically. Unless one is aware of all possible surnames of interest, he might not be able to recognize names of importance to his problem. For this reason it is often advisable to visit the burial place in person or through one's agent. Relatives with different surnames may be buried in the same proximity as the ancestor of interest and an actual visit to the spot might disclose valuable facts through association.

In some instances, a family headstone exists and each person is buried and marked by a special individual marker. In many parts of the United States and Canada, individual family burial grounds exist and almost all tombstones or headstones pertain to relatives.

When doing research in the midwest, certain parts of the south and parts of the west, it is often necessary to investigate the actual farm or homestead to find burial places. Sometimes, persons were buried in a wooded corner of a farm or in some out-of-the-way place and not in the local cemetery. In these cases it is essential to consult local persons to determine the burial locations.

Whether the cemetery is a well-kept municipal garden with a full-time sexton or a weed-covered burial place on the corner of some farm, it should be searched or investigated if it is pertinent to the genealogical problem. Headstones have been known to be used as steps to a house or some outbuilding on a farm, and have also been used as tractor-weights. Headstones have been pushed over by vandals or destroyed through the ravages of nature and covered with silt and overgrowth; or they may have deteriorated to such an extent that inscriptions are illegible. It is not uncommon to find field genealogists carrying shovels, pumice-stone, chalk, sketching paper, screwdrivers and other paraphernalia to uncover, locate and translate information from headstones.

Census-Mortality Records. Since its beginning in 1790, the U.S. Federal Census has recorded identifying data for close

to one billion names, including, of course, those duplicated from census to census. It has handed copies of these records back to several million of the counted as legal proof of age, place of birth, citizenship or kinship. The same is true of state and other local enumerations which have been taken in the United States.

When the Founding Fathers made constitutional provision for a decennial count of the population to determine allocation of representatives in Congress, they could not have foreseen how the census would yield a by-product of such direct benefit to many of the people it would count. Genealogists and historians have found the records most revealing, and requests for personal census records directed to the Census Bureau have ranged from the routine—persons who realize they are without legal proof of birth or age and want to be prepared “if anything comes up,” to those of desperation: citizens with plans made for a trip abroad who are suddenly faced with a no-birth-certificate, no-passport situation; old people unable to obtain needed assistance without proof of age; persons unable to claim their rightful shares of estates because of inability to prove relationship and others.

Regular birth certificates are not issued by the Bureau of the Census but by the Health Department or similar agency in the state in which the birth occurred. However, since it was 1920 before the last state adopted compulsory birth registration, many persons born before that time did not have their births recorded. Even persons who keep orderly records—with or without governmental urging—sometimes find themselves without necessary credentials. Fire and flood and fate in various other forms have a destructive way with even the best-kept records. Those of the U.S. Census have not been immune. Some of the early census records were burned by the British in 1814 and practically all those of the 1890 Census were destroyed in a government building fire in 1921 and through later legislation.

The census has not only been of great value to the genealogist, but to veterans of the Civil War and Spanish-American War needing proof to support their pension

claims. Legislation affecting employment of children, pension laws enacted by various state legislatures, national social security legislation, mobilization of men and women for defense employment in which proof of citizenship was required—these have all increased the volume of requests for personal information as recorded by the census taker.

Extant 1790 federal enumerations have been published and may be found in most larger libraries and historical societies, and the remainder of those which are not still confidential (1800-1880) have been microfilmed and made available to the public. The Genealogical Society in Salt Lake City has copies of all existing federal enumerations that are not confidential. The originals remain in custody of the Bureau of the Census at Washington, D.C., or at the Census Branch at Pittsburg, Kansas. Some of the original 1880 enumerations have been sent to state archives or historical societies for deposit.

The enumerations were taken on a county basis within each state and the researcher must have an idea of the county involved before he can make an efficient search in the records. *Special Lists Number 8, Population Schedules, 1800-1870*, Washington: The National Archives and Records Service, General Services Administration, 1951, is a volume index to counties and major cities in the United States. This publication outlines which county enumerations are in existence and whether they are photostats or the originals. *Federal Population Censuses 1840-80*, Washington: The National Archives and Records Service, General Services Administration, 1955, is a price list of microfilm copies of the original schedules and indicates on which roll of microfilm specific counties may be located.

Government pamphlet BC-628 outlines the necessary steps to gain census information from the Bureau of the Census files and we quote from that publication:

Assuming the birth was not registered, and that acceptable proofs, such as affidavits from the doctor or midwife who attended the birth, family Bible records, or baptismal certificate, cannot be offered for a delayed certificate, census records may be the only recourse.

Here is the procedure:

- (1) Ask the Personal Census Service Branch, Bureau of the Census, Pittsburg, Kansas, 66762, for an Age Search Application Form.
- (2) Read the instructions printed on the form, then fill it out and sign.
- (3) Send the completed form with remittance—\$4.00 for a search in turn, \$5.00 for an expedited search ahead of turn—to the Personal Census Service Branch, Bureau of the Census, Pittsburg, Kansas 66762.

The fee—\$4.00 or \$5.00—pays for a search of not more than two censuses for one person and for one copy of the information found. If additional copies are desired, enclose \$1.00 for each.

It may be 30 days or more before results of the routine \$4.00 search are in the mail, depending on the backlog of requests and the ease or difficulty in locating the information.

An application accompanied by \$5.00 gets the same attention and the same results, only faster. The extra fee is used to pay special searchers who work on hurry-up requests. Unless there is unusual difficulty in locating the information, the expedited search should be completed within 2 weeks.

Since January 1, 1952, the age search operation in the Census Bureau has been self-supporting by expressed will of Congress. Therefore, the fee sent with an application pays for the search and is not refunded even to the rare individual never tagged by the census taker, since the work for which the fee is paid does not include any guarantee of a satisfactory "find."

Applicants sometimes express surprise upon learning that the Census Bureau must, so to speak, know where they are before it can find them. In other words, the Bureau must have the applicant's address at the time of the census and names of the persons with whom he was residing before it can undertake to locate his personal record among the millions of names in its files.

The names of individuals are not alphabetically arranged on the original census schedules, but appear in the order of the house-to-house visits of census takers within predetermined enumeration districts.

The names and other pertinent information of persons reported in the 1900 and 1920 Census were transcribed to file cards as part of a Federal Works project in the mid-thirties. The cards were then arranged by a code under a system by which all names sounding alike are filed together regardless of spelling differences or errors, and information can be located in most instances for these years if

the applicant furnishes only his name, the name of the head of the household of which he was a member, and the city or county and state in which he was living at the time of the census.

The records of the 1910, 1930, 1940, 1950, and 1960 Censuses have not been coded under this system and considerably more information is necessary before a search can be made in the records of these years. A person residing in a city at the time these censuses were taken should furnish the house number, name of the street, city, county and state, and the name of the parent or head of the household with whom living. If residing in a small town, all available information as to crossroads, road names, name of township in which residence was located and any other available pertinent data should be furnished. Rural residents should furnish the rural route number and also the distance and direction of the residence from the nearest town.

The personal information in the records of 1900 and later is confidential by law and may be furnished only upon the written request of the person to whom it relates or, for a proper purpose, a legal representative such as guardian or administrator of an estate. According to the Census Bureau:

Information regarding a child who has not reached legal age may be obtained upon the written request of either parent. If the record requested relates to a deceased person, the application must be signed by (1) a blood relative to the immediate family (parent, brother, sister or child), (2) the surviving wife or husband or (3) a beneficiary with legal evidence of such beneficiary relationship. In all cases involving deceased persons, a certified copy of the death certificate is required.¹

The Bureau is alert to follow the spirit as well as the letter of the law prohibiting the use of census information to the detriment of an individual. As an example, if a person is shown to have been enumerated in prison in a particular census, he will be notified before a transcript of the information is mailed out and he may decide not to have the information issued. The Census Bureau also emphasizes that its files are not to be used for the locating of missing persons.

¹*Your Name is Somewhere in the Census Records*—Form BC-628, Pittsburg, Kansas: U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of the Census, Personal Census Service Branch, a pamphlet.

Content of the 1960-1900 federal schedules is listed below:

1960 Census

Address; name; relationship to head of household; sex; race; month and year of birth; marital status; whether residence is on farm; place of birth—in which state, U. S. possession, or foreign country; if born outside U. S., language spoken in home before coming to U. S.; country of birth of parents; length of residence at present address, where resided five years earlier; educational attainment; school or college attendance, and whether public or private school; times married and date of first marriage; of women ever married, how many children ever borne; employment status; hours worked in week preceding enumeration; date last worked; occupation, industry, and class of worker; place of work—which city or town (and whether in city limits or outside), county, state; means of transportation to work; weeks worked in 1959; earnings in 1959; other income in 1959; veteran status—which war and present service.

1950 Census

Address; whether house is on farm; name; relationship to head of household; race; sex; age; marital status; state (or foreign country) of birth; if foreign born, whether naturalized; employment status during week preceding enumeration; hours worked; occupation, industry, and class of worker; whether living in same house a year ago; whether living on farm a year ago; if not in same house, county and state of residence a year ago; country of birth of parents; educational attainment; school attendance; if looking for work, how many weeks has he been looking; number of weeks worked in 1949; earnings in 1949; other income in 1949; veteran status—which war and present service; for persons who worked last year but not in current labor force, occupation, industry, and class of worker on last job; if ever married, whether married more than once; duration of present marital status; if female and ever married, number of children ever borne.

1940 Census

Address; home owned or rented; value or monthly rental; whether on a farm; name, relationship to head of household; sex; race; age; marital status; school or college attendance; educational attainment; place of birth—if U. S., state, territory, or possession—if foreign born, country in which birthplace was situated on January 1, 1937; citizenship of foreign born; county and state of residence five years earlier and whether on farm or in place of 2500 or more inhabitants; employment status during week of March 24-30, 1940; if at work, or in public emergency work (WPA, NYA, CCC, etc.); if in

private or nonemergency government work, number of hours worked during week of March 24-30; if seeking work or on public emergency work, duration of unemployment up to March 30; occupation, industry, and class of worker; number of weeks worked in 1939; wage or salary income in 1939 and whether received other income of \$50 or more; place of birth (state, territory, possession, or foreign country) of father and mother; language spoken in home in earliest childhood; veteran status, or whether wife, widow or under-18 child of veteran; whether has Social Security number, and if so whether deductions were made from all or part of wages or salary; usual occupation, industry, and class of worker; of women ever married—whether married more than once, age at first marriage, and number of children ever borne.

1930 Census

Name; address; relationship to head of family; home owned or rented; value or monthly rental; radio set; whether family lives on a farm; sex; race; age; marital status; age at first marriage; school attendance; ability to read and write; place of birth of person, father, and mother; if foreign born, language spoken in home before coming to U.S.; year of immigration; naturalization; ability to speak English; occupation, industry, and class of worker; whether actually at work previous day (or last regular working day); whether a veteran of U. S. military or naval forces, which war. Special schedule used for further detail on unemployment.

1920 Census

Address; name; relationship to head of family; home owned or rented; if owned, free or mortgaged; sex; race; age; marital status; year of immigration to the U. S.; naturalized or alien; if naturalized, year of naturalization; school attendance; place of birth of person, father, and mother; for each of these reporting foreign birth, what was mother tongue (native language); ability to speak English; occupation, industry, and class of worker.

1910 Census

Address; name; relationship to head of family; sex; race; age; marital status; number of years of present marriage; mother of how many children and number now living; place of birth of person, father, and mother; for foreign born persons, year of immigration to U. S.; whether naturalized or alien; ability to speak English; if not, language spoken; occupation, industry, and class of worker; if an employee, number of weeks out of work during year; ability to read and write; school attendance; home owned or rented; if owned, is it free or mortgaged; whether a survivor of Union or Confederate Army or Navy; whether blind or deaf and dumb.

1900 Census

Address; name; relationship to head of family; sex; race; age; marital status; number of years married; mother of how many children and number now living; place of birth of person, father, and mother; if person is foreign born, year of immigration to the U. S.; number of years in the U. S.; whether naturalized; occupation, trade, or profession of persons 10 years old and over; months not employed; months attended school; ability to write or read; ability to speak English; home owned or rented; if owned, whether free of mortgage.

The 1890 federal schedules were partially damaged by a fire in the Commerce Department building in 1921 and were totally destroyed in 1935. From 15 to 25 per cent of the 1890 census was destroyed by the fire and in 1933 Congress authorized the destruction of the remaining records. However, there were veterans' schedules taken at the same enumeration which had been forwarded to the Veterans Administration and these remain intact. Microfilm copies may be found in local and state repositories. Veterans' schedules for all the states and territories from which these data were compiled are not available in the National Archives. Schedules for the first fourteen states, Alabama through Kansas, alphabetically, have been misplaced or inadvertently destroyed. For the remaining states the records are practically complete, and if one knows the names of the state and county in which a veteran or the widow of a member of the Union forces lived in June, 1890, information concerning such a person may be obtained comparatively easily from these records.

The 1880 federal enumerations are public and have been microfilmed for public use. The originals either remain in the National Archives or have been transferred to state repositories. A partial index to the federal 1880 schedules exists and a microfilm copy of this index is at the Genealogical Society at Salt Lake City. The original file is presently in the custody of the National Archives in Washington, D. C. This index was constructed under the Historical Records Survey Project, Works Progress Administration, during the 1930's and includes information on families with children of ten years of age and under in the household. If a family of interest was living during the 1880

enumeration and if there was a child of 10 years or under in the household, they are listed in this special card index.

The 1880-1850 enumerations are perhaps the greatest record boon to genealogists in the United States for those respective periods. Highlights of their content is listed below:

1880 Census

Address; name; relationship to head of family; sex; race; age; marital status; born within the year; married within the year; profession, occupation, or trade; number of months unemployed during census year; whether person is sick or temporarily disabled so as to be unable to attend to ordinary business or duties; if so, what is the sickness or disability; whether blind, deaf and dumb, idiotic, insane, maimed, crippled or bedridden; attended school within the year; ability to read and write; place of birth of person, father, and mother.

1870 Census

Address; name; age; sex; color (including Chinese and Indian); citizenship for males over 21; profession, occupation or trade; value of real estate; value of personal estate; place of birth; whether father and mother were foreign born; born within the year; married within the year; attended school within the year; for persons 10 years old and over whether able to read and write; whether deaf and dumb, blind, insane, or idiotic.

1860 Census

Name; address; age; sex; color (white, black, or mulatto) for each person; whether deaf and dumb, blind, insane or idiotic; all free persons required to give value of real estate and of personal estate owned; profession, occupation or trade for each male and female over 15; place of birth (state, territory, or country); whether married within the year, whether attended school within the year; whether unable to read and write for persons over 20; whether a pauper or convict.

1850 Census

Name; address; age; sex; color (white, black or mulatto) for each person; whether deaf and dumb, blind, insane or idiotic; all free persons required to give value of real estate owned; profession, occupation, or trade for each male person over 15; place of birth; whether married within the year; whether attended school within the year; whether unable to read and write for persons over 20; whether a pauper or convict.

1840 Census

Name of head of family; address; number of free white males and females in 5-year age groups to 20, 10-year age groups from 20 to 100, and 100 years old and over; number of slaves and free colored persons in six broad age groups; number of deaf and dumb; number of blind; number of insane and idiotic in public or private charge; number of persons in each family employed in each of seven classes of occupations; number of schools and number of scholars; number of white persons over 20 who could not read and write; number of pensioners for Revolutionary or military service.

1830 Census

Name of head of family; address; number of free white males and females in 5-year age groups to 20, 10-year age groups from 20 to 100, and 100 years old and over; number of slaves and free colored persons in six broad age groups, number of deaf and dumb under 14, 14 to 24, and 25 years and upward; number of blind; foreigners not naturalized.

1820 Census

Name of head of family; address; number of free white males and females under 10 years of age, 10 and under 16, 16 and under 26, 26 and under 45, and 45 years and upward; number of free white males between 16 and 18 years; foreigners not naturalized; male and female slaves and free colored persons under 14 years, 14 and under 26, 26 and under 45, and 45 and upward; all other free persons, except Indians not taxed; number of persons (including slaves) engaged in agriculture, commerce and manufacturers.

1810 Census

Name of head of family; address; number of free white males and females under 10 years of age, 10 and under 16, 16 and under 26, 26 and under 45, and 45 years and upward; all other free persons, except Indians not taxed; number of slaves.

1800 Census

Name of head of family; address; number of free white males and females under 10 years of age, 10 and under 16, 16 and under 26, 26 and under 45, and 45 years and upward; all other free persons, except Indians not taxed; number of slaves.

1790 Census

Name of head of family; address; number of free white males of 16 years and up, including heads; free white males under 16; free white females, including heads; all other free persons; number of slaves.

It is wise to pick up the family of interest in one of the later schedules (where possible) and then run each enumeration earlier and also later. For instance, locate the family in the 1850 enumeration and then run the 1860-1880 schedules for possible additional genealogical facts. Then run the 1840 and earlier censuses and try to tie in the family with other persons. It may be that relatives or even parents and grandparents were living in the same proximity as the person of interest. Many persons fail to utilize these earlier censuses to their fullest value. They are primarily finding tools but they can often add other genealogical facts to the research project, leading to the final solution of a particular problem.

Indexes exist for several 1850 and earlier federal enumerations but they are generally in the respective states. As an example, the Indiana State Library at Indianapolis has a card file index for the 1850 as well as for the 1820 and 1830 schedules. The Illinois State Archives, Census Division at Springfield, Illinois, has index information on all early federal enumerations through 1850. Indexes are known to be in existence for 1850 census schedules of Alabama, Connecticut, Oklahoma, Texas and Utah. Indexes for many of the early 1800-1840 schedules exist in the Genealogical Society Library at Salt Lake City, and many organizations and individuals are currently working on such indexing projects. Using computer equipment, Ohio has indexed their 1820 and 1830 schedules, and students at Brigham Young University in Provo, Utah, are presently (1967) experimenting with computerization of the 1880 schedules of Utah, Idaho and Arizona. It is hoped that indexing will continue and perhaps someone will be able to harness the individual efforts into one national program which would be of tremendous value to researchers in all fields of social study.

In addition to federal schedules, there are many state and local census enumerations which can be of great assistance to the genealogist. Many states took enumerations of their population during the interval between federal enumerations, particularly after 1850. New York and Kansas probably have the best collections. Possibly the best list

of extant state enumerations is to be found in *State Census Documents 1790-1948, being an annotated bibliography of Censuses of Population taken after the year 1790 by State and Territory*. It was published by the Department of Commerce, Bureau of the Census, Washington, D. C., in 1948. This list is in the Government Document Section at BYU, the call number C3-2: S-2;7-780-948. The New York State Library published a bibliography of *New York State and Federal Census Records* in Bulletin 81 at Albany, University of New York Press, 1957, which is of excellent content.

In addition to local, state and federal census enumerations, there are mortality schedules for certain years which can assist the genealogist. Mortality schedules were completed on a federal and state basis in conjunction with the 1850-1890 federal enumerations and the majority of these lists have been preserved. They include information on persons who died during the year previous to the census years. The lists correspond to the census enumerations for the respective year.

Probate-Guardianship Records. Probate is a civil court action and has to do with the proving of a person's estate, real and/or personal. Such related matters as guardianship, adoption, marriage and the handling of incompetents (lunatics and idiots) are also often considered part of this court's responsibility. Major trial courts under the state court system are responsible for probate action and jurisdiction is usually on a county basis, though in some parts of the country jurisdiction is on a town, district or even on a state basis. A special probate court might be established or one of the other civil courts may handle such matters. The "Surrogate" court is established to handle probate matters in New York and New Jersey while the "Orphan's" court has the responsibility in Pennsylvania. The "Ordinary" court in Georgia holds probate responsibility while such courts as "Circuit," "Common Pleas," "County," or similar courts may handle probate proceedings in other states.

In these courts, one might find such records as (1) case files which contain original documents relating to a particular case; (3) minutes giving a record of the court pro-

ceedings; (4) orders listing the decrees and judgments of the court; and (5) exhibits, which might be a family Bible, notes or real items which may have been used as evidence in a particular case.

The disposition of an individual's personal and/or real estate is the subject of a will, and the lawful execution of a will is the purpose of probate courts. A person who makes a will is termed the testator, and when he dies it is said that he died testate. When a person dies without leaving a will he is said to have died intestate. Under each of these situations there is an appropriate court action. In addition to the will, which may have been in writing or nuncupative (oral), other valuable genealogical documents might be extant. The "petition" may be extant in the probate packet or the case file and is a formal request for the court to probate a particular estate. Any interested part might petition the court, and the document includes such information as the name of the petitioner, the name of the deceased, his date and place of death, the names and relationship of known heirs, their addresses and certification information. It is possible for the petition to contain more genealogical data than the actual will, because the testator may not have listed all relatives of interest.

Petitions exist in both testate and intestate estates. With regard to testate estates, the court normally issues "letters testamentary" to inform the executor (or executrix) of his appointment and to give him authority to execute the will. If the executor refuses to take the responsibility, the court issues "letters of administration with the will annexed." With respect to intestate estates, the court issues "letters of administration" appointing an administrator (or an administratrix) to handle estate proceedings. In both cases, bonds, inventories, appraisals, sales and accounts, as well as documents relating to the division and distribution of the estate, might be found. The researcher should not be discouraged if he is unable to obtain a will for a deceased ancestor, but he should be alert to find such other probate documents as might exist.

Special books of entry usually exist in the courthouse wherein probate information may be recorded, but these generally include only such information as the recording of the will, the inventory and appraisal, or perhaps letters of administration. The original documents are in the probate packet or the case file and such files are usually in the court house. In some states the older files have been transferred to the state archives or to other repositories and must be searched there. Many states have passed legislation giving the state archivist responsibility for the proper preservation of such public and official records. In most cases the researcher must visit the actual courthouse or repository and search the files in person or through his agent, for county and state officials are unable to undertake this type of work.

Because probate is a court action, there may be entries in civil court order books or their counterparts. Probate, land and other court actions are often intermingled in the records and are all somewhat closely related. The successful researcher will use each of the record groups and correlate the information found to solve his genealogical problems. There are cases of wills recorded in deed books and vice versa, and instances where transfer of real estate title was accomplished solely by a will and not recorded in deeds or related land records. The researcher might take this into consideration when he is unable to locate original title in land records. There are also instances in which civil court order books contain probate information apart and separate from regular probate books of entry. Experience has also shown that entries in court records might be under the name of the executor or administrator and not under the name of the deceased.

It is common to find master indexes to probates and estates which indicate the documents that exist for a particular case and these should be used first, where extant, to locate probate information on a particular person. It is not expecting too much to correspond with the probate court and ask for a search of this instrument and to ask for cost data on obtaining photocopies or extracts.

As mentioned previously, the probate court may also be responsible for marriage registration and for handling guardianship matters. Marriage information is usually in the form of a register, and on payments of a fee, copies may be obtained from offices which have such records. In the past such information was public and available for search at no charge but there has been a good deal of legislation passed making birth, marriage and death information confidential and subject to fee. Illinois passed such legislation in 1960 and other states have done the same. However, regular probate matters are public and official and are available for search by any interested person during reasonable hours.

Guardianship matters have to do with minors or persons under age, and the genealogist will find special books of entry in most courthouses. Documents may exist appointing the guardian and various documents may have resulted from the guardian's work. Affidavits, accounts, depositions and related information often can be found. Special books of entry often exist for guardianship proceedings but in some repositories the information is scattered in other probate books. The appointment of a guardian and the accounting by that guardian might be recorded in will books and miscellaneous court records. As with other probate records, where such records have not been microfilmed or otherwise placed in research repositories, it is necessary to search them in person or by agent.

For an excellent article on the origin of probate jurisdiction in the United States, the reader is referred to Roscoe Pound's *Organization of Courts*, Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1940 pp. 136-140. For an informative article by Donald Lines Jacobus on "Probate Law and Custom" in the United States, the reader is referred to the appendix of this work.

Fortunately, much work has been done in many of the older states on extracting and abstracting probate information, and much of this has been published in the form of digests, abstracts and extracts. These are not always reliable and their very nature indicates that they are not complete so the genealogist should approach them with some caution.

Land-Property Records. Any genealogical fact might be found in land or property records and the U.S. genealogist should consider his pedigree to be on solid footing only after he has used such records. These tools are excellent to determine where a person came from; when he arrived in a particular area or left another area; what his wife's name was; the names of his children, grandchildren, parents, brothers and sisters, as well as other relatives. Land records have been used successfully to determine the facts of parentage on an adopted child and on illegitimacies. When an individual dies intestate, seized of land, his heirs may release their right to the land through a quit-claim deed and in this way valuable genealogical facts are preserved. Sometimes the sale of land relating to a deceased person's intestate estate has listed all known conceivable heirs.

There are a host of documents and proceedings relating to land and property records including grants, warrants, certificates, patents, surveys, plat books, deeds, leases, mortgages, contracts, powers of attorney, dower right, and different types of tax records.

Land and property records relating to the Colonial States remain in the respective states or in state and national repositories. These include information on early grants, charters, headrights, and related actions. The records relating to the public domain states are to be found in the respective county court houses or in national land office repositories (Bureau of Land Management and the National Archives).

For an excellent discussion on the origin of land titles in the United States, the reader is referred to the late Alfred N. Chandler's *Land Title Origins*, New York: Robert Schalkenbach Foundation, 1945. This gives an excellent state-by-state breakdown of the land systems in the United States over various periods of time. For a fine treatise on land records and systems used in the Southern Colonies of Colonial America, the reader should study the Introduction (by Robert Armistead Stewart) of *Cavaliers and Pioneers* by Nell Marion Nugent, Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing

Company, Inc., 1963. These publications are both on file at BYU.

Lands in the Colonial States were surveyed by "metes and bounds," while those in the Public Domain were surveyed by the "rectangular method," and for an excellent discussion of these methods, the student should consult C. E. Sherman's *Original Ohio Land Subdivisions*, Vol I, Columbus, Ohio: The Ohio State Reformatory Binder, 1925. This publication is available for search by interested persons in the Genealogical Research Technology Lab at BYU.

Land records in most New England states are filed by town or by district while most of the remainder of the United States file their records on a county basis. Grantor and grantee indexes usually exist by which the researcher can determine what land transfers were made by a particular individual. Filing land transactions by "description" is in vogue in some states, and the genealogist must then have an idea where the land was located before documents relating to it can be found in the courthouse. The county auditor, the state engineer or other public officers responsible for the recording of land actions can usually provide the interested researcher with a map of the area showing section and township lines.

County officials will usually search the index to deeds by correspondence and inform the researcher of the cost for obtaining land documents. However, it is usually necessary to search the actual records in person or by agent to get maximum value from them. When photostatic copies are available, the genealogist can accomplish some good through their purchase, but this can become quite expensive when several transactions of interest are extant.

In Public Domain states, the researcher will usually be able to trace land title from its present owner back to the original patent (document of original title) while in the State Land states (Colonial America) he may be able to trace title back to the original grant or charter.

In addition to land records on file in the town, district,

county or state offices, there are land entry records in the General Land Office at Washington D. C.

The records of the former General Land Office, now in the National Archives, include the land-entry papers for the 30 public-land states, including Alaska. The public-land states include all of the United States except the 13 original states and Kentucky, Maine, Vermont, West Virginia, Tennessee, Texas and Hawaii. These states were never part of the national public domain and records relating to their own public lands are in their possession.

The land-entry papers in the National Archives are in two main arrangement patterns. Before 1908 they are arranged alphabetically by state and thereunder by name of the district land office where the entry was made. For each land office there is a separate series for each class of entry. Within each series the individual entry files are arranged in numerical order according to the number assigned to each entry at the time the final certificate was issued by the register of the local land office. With minor exceptions, warrants, scrip, mineral, lieu selection entries, and all patented cases after 1908 are arranged in an unbroken numerical series, regardless of state or land office, according to the number assigned at the time of patenting.

There is no general overall index to entrymen or patentees for land-entry papers prior to 1908. There is such an index in the Bureau of Land Management, Department of the Interior, for the patented cases after 1908. There are partial indexes, however, either in the Bureau of Land Management or in the National Archives for the following series prior to 1908: (1) Warrants under the Military Bounty Land Act of 1788 (incomplete), (2) Virginia military-bounty-land warrants, (3) private land claims, (4) coal cash entries, and (5) mineral entries. There is also a consolidated name index (by name of entryman or patentee) for those land entries that are arranged by district land office in Alabama, Arizona, Florida, Louisiana, Nevada, Utah and Alaska. This index does not include names of persons who "located" land under military bounty-land warrants. As the index is consolidated and the names are in one alphabetical sequence, it is not possible to select all entries for any particular state. Each index card shows the name of the entryman, description of the land, name of land office, date, type and number of entry. No personal information of any kind regarding the entryman appears on these cards. Among the records of the Veterans Administration, in the National Archives, there is an alphabetical index to applications for military bounty-land warrants issued under the acts of 1847, 1850, 1852 and 1855.

For all land-entry files other than those covered by name indexes, it is necessary, in order to find a file relating to a particular entry, to know (1) the legal description of the land in terms of township,

range, section, and fraction of section or (2) the date (or approximate date) of the entry and the name of the land office through which the entry was made. A legal description of the land can usually be obtained from the recorder of deeds of the county in which the land is located.

The federal land records document only the initial transaction whereby the land was transferred from the Government to the first owner; whether that first owner was a state government, a railroad company or a private individual. Information concerning all later transactions in the chain of title to that land must be looked for among local records.

The land-entry papers in the National Archives include (1) records relating to entries based on purchase or special conditions of settlement, 1800-1951; (2) bounty-land-warrant records, ca. 1789-1908; (3) homestead entries; and (4) private land-claims records, 1789-1908. The first class, records relating to entries based on purchases or special conditions, may be divided into several groups. The credit entry files and the cash entry files contain relatively little information of genealogical value; the donation entry files contain genealogical data in varying amounts.

The Bureau of Land Management has retained all of the record copies of the patents issued for all types of land entries, 1800-to date. No personal information about the entryman, however, appears on these record copies. To obtain information from these record copies it is necessary to have the date of the patent and the volume and page number of the record copy as shown on each individual land-entry paper now filed in the National Archives.

CREDIT PRIOR ENTRIES

Most of the land sold by the federal government between 1800 and 1820 was sold on credit at no less than \$2.00 an acre in accordance with provisions of the Act of May 10, 1800. The act allowed land to be bought in installments, with the purchaser paying $\frac{1}{3}$ of the price with each installment. Upon making the final payment, the purchaser received a credit prior final certificate. These final certificates show the name of the purchaser, county of residence he stated at the final payment, date of certificate, description of the tract in terms of subdivision, section, township and range, name of the land office, the amount paid and a reference to the record copy of the patent. No other personal information about the purchaser is given in these certificates.

CREDIT UNDER ENTRIES

Entries made under the Act of March 3, 1821, which granted longer terms for the credit purchase of land, are known as "credit under entries." Upon making the final payment the purchaser re-

ceived a credit under final certificate similar in all respects to the credit prior certificates. Most entries consist solely of the final certificate.

CASH ENTRIES

Nearly all of the public land sold by the federal government to individual settlers after the Act of April 21, 1820, was sold for cash at no less than \$1.25 per acre. The cash entry files, which cover roughly the period from 1820-1908, consist generally of a Receiver's Receipt for the money and a Register's Receipt registering the land purchases and authorizing the claimant to obtain a patent. Each receipt shows the name of the purchaser, the county of residence stated at the time of purchase, the date of purchase, name of land office, description of the land in terms of fraction of section, section, township and range, the number of acres in the tract, the amount of money paid and the volume and page of the record copy of the patent. No personal information concerning the entryman was required in cash entries and little genealogical data appears in them. If the tract paid for was claimed on the basis of a pre-emption claim, the cash entry may include a pre-emption proof or similar document which may show the name of the claimant, his age, citizenship, date of entry on tract, number and relationship of members of his household and the nature of his improvements. If the tract paid for was entered originally as a homestead and later commuted to a cash entry, the cash entry file may include the homestead entry documents. If, however, the homestead entry file may include the homestead entry documents. If, however, the homestead entry was commuted to cash, the final proof testimony, which is the important source of genealogical information, was not taken.

DONATION LAND CLAIMS FILES, Florida, Oregon, and Washington

The donation entry files pertain to land donated to settlers in return for certain conditions of settlement. They consist of Florida, Oregon and Washington donation entry files. The Florida files usually include a permit to settle, an application for a patent, a report of the land agent and a final certificate authorizing the issuance of patent. A permit to settle shows the name of the applicant, his marital status, the month and year he began residing in Florida and a legal description of the land.

The Oregon and Washington Donation Files for each land office are files in two numerical series, one relating to complete entries, and the other to incomplete entries. A file for a complete entry usually contains a notification of the settlement of public land and the donation certificate. The notification shows the legal description of the land, name of entryman, how long a resident on the

land, date of application, place of residence, his citizenship, age, place and date of birth; and, if married, the date and place of marriage. Sometimes, the given name of the wife also appears. The National Archives has a microfilm copy of the Index to Oregon Donation Land Claims prepared by the Oregon State Library. This index is in two parts, one arranged alphabetically and the other geographically. There are also several indexes to registers of these donation claims but they contain gaps.

BOUNTY LAND WARRANTS AND SCRIP

The entry papers for the Virginia Revolutionary warrants are dated chiefly 1795-1830 and include such documents as a surrendered warrant, a certificate of location, a survey, power of attorney, and assignment and possibly an affidavit concerning the veteran's heirs. Most Virginia Warrants were used in the Virginia Military District of Ohio prior to 1830 and were exchanged for Scrip after that date. By the five acts beginning in 1830, Congress provided that holders of unused Virginia and United States Revolutionary War warrants could surrender them for scrip certificates. These certificates could be used for land location anywhere on the public domain that land was offered for selection. A scrip application file includes such documents as the surrendered bounty land warrant, power of attorney, assignment, an affidavit of relationship and related correspondence.

BOUNTY LAND WARRANTS

The records relating to United States Revolutionary War Warrants surrendered for land in the United States Military District of Ohio are dated chiefly 1789-1833. In most instances the surrendered warrant and the certificate of location are the only documents filed but occasionally an affidavit, power of attorney, or similar document is filed with the warrant. Warrants based upon the Act of 1803 as extended in 1806 show the location of the tract in terms of lot, subdivision, township and range.

The records relating to United States War of 1812. Warrants include the notification of the filing of the warrant with the General Land Office, a power of attorney and a letter of transmittal. A typical file contains such information as the name of the veteran, the location of the land, date of patent and volume and page number of the record copy of the patent.

The last important group of warrant files consists of records relating to United States warrants issued for unspecified land based on a series of acts passed between 1847 and 1855. Many of these warrants involve veterans of the Mexican War. The Mexican War is the last war for which veterans were granted bounty lands; no warrants have been issued for any service after March 3, 1855; the date of

the last set. The Homestead Act, enacted in 1862, served to take the place of bounty land acts.

HOMESTEAD ENTRIES

Under the homestead act of May 20, 1862, citizens and persons who had filed their intentions to become citizens were given 160 acres of land on the public domain provided they fulfilled certain conditions, such as building a house on the land, cultivating the land and residing on the homestead for five years.

The homestead entry papers, filed by names of land office, are dated 1863-1908. They are usually two separately numbered series for each land office, one relating to complete homestead entries, the other to unperfected entries. A complete file includes the homestead application, the certificate of publication of intention to make a claim, the homestead final proof and a final certificate authorizing the claimant to obtain a patent. The homestead Final Proof Testimony, the only document in the file that includes personal information about the claimant, shows the name, age and post office of the claimant, a description of the tract, a description of the house and the date when residence was established, the number and relationship of members of the family (but seldom their names), evidence of citizenship, the nature of the crops and number of acres under cultivation and testimony of witnesses as to the truth of the claimant's statements.

PRIVATE LAND CLAIMS

These are claims to land made on the basis of grants or settlements that occurred before the United States acquired sovereignty. These claims relate chiefly to persons who claimed to have received grants from foreign sovereigns to their descendants, and to pioneer citizens of the United States who settled in these lands with the permission of the foreign governments.

The private land claims in the National Archives relate to land in portions of 14 states: Alabama, Arizona, Arkansas, California, Colorado, Florida, Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Louisiana, Michigan, Mississippi, Missouri, New Mexico and Wisconsin.

The claims papers of the General Land Office are filed in separate dockets containing such documents as correspondence, affidavits and copies of court decisions. Since all of these dockets are poorly indexed with regard to the personal names of the applicants or grantees it is essential to have a legal description of the land in order to locate an individual docket. Records relating to individual claims presented between 1790 and 1837 were reported to Congress and transcribed and indexed in the American State Papers Class VIII Public Land, Gales and Seaton, 8 vols.

Court-Legislative Records. This record group can provide the researcher with a wide variety of interesting and informative genealogical data ranging from the name and age of a deponent to information about the naturalization and citizenship of an immigrant ancestor. Matters relating to probate, guardianship, divorce, naturalization, citizenship, land dispute, equity matters and criminal acts are but a few court actions which are of special concern to the genealogist. Too often we limit ourselves to the more popular genealogical sources, such as census or church records, and neglect this record group which can often provide us with the very genealogical facts we seek.

In order better to understand the many documents which may be found under this grouping, it might be well to give a brief outline of the court structure in the United States and to give basic information on the nature of law.

In one way or another the law touches everyone in the United States—whether the effect be pleasant or unpleasant, tangible or intangible, direct or indirect—and law is a constant force in our everyday life. In a general sense, law represents the rules of conduct approved by society and backed by organized force of the community. Posey says that “all law affecting civilians (excepting only martial law in areas under military control in time of war) may be divided into *civil law* and *criminal law*”. Civil law concerns itself with disputes between private individuals, the government supplying the tribunals in which disputants may have their cases heard and impartially decided. Criminal law, on the other hand, defines modes of conduct which are so anti-social that persons who perform or commit them will be punished by the government itself. In criminal law, no private person enters suit; the government itself prosecutes. While criminal law is more dramatic and more fully reported in the newspapers, civil law constitutes the main bulk of the business of the courts. All law, whether it be civil or criminal, has its origin in the legislative process (statutory law) or is the result of common practice or precedent already established by the courts (common law).

Court structure in the United States falls under two general classifications, i.e., the state court system and the federal court system, each having original and appellate jurisdiction under certain spheres of action. The state courts are established by constitution and by legislative acts, and though their judicial structure varies from state to state their fundamental aspects are the same in all states. Every state has *minor courts* for petty cases and *general courts* of original jurisdiction.

Zimmerman says that "the organization of the courts in various states exhibits such great diversity as almost to defy classification," while Johnson suggests that their general classification is quite simple. He says that "minor courts" are at the bottom of the court system and are primarily justice of the peace and magistrate courts with "major trial courts" next followed by "intermediate appellate courts" and finally the "state supreme court".

According to Johnson, the minor courts handle both civil and criminal matters of a petty nature and the major trial courts are standard trial courts with judge and jury which hear and decide in original proceedings practically all cases of importance. They also have appellate jurisdiction in cases from the minor courts. These major trial courts are known by various names in different states, such as the county court, the circuit court, the probate court (handling special probate and guardianship matters), the court of common pleas, the court of quarter sessions, etc. Zimmerman says that these major trial courts (also called general trial courts) have original jurisdiction to try persons accused of felonies and other serious crimes and to hear all but the less important civil cases.

Between the courts of original jurisdiction and the state supreme court are intermediate appellate courts with varying jurisdictions. In general, they hear cases appealed from the lower courts and usually have three or more judges who sit and hear matters of law. These courts may be called district courts or superior courts of appeals or may be known by other titles in various states. Not all states have such

intermediate appellate courts. According to Zimmerman, only fourteen have such courts. Johnson indicates that "the highest judicial tribunal in a state is ordinarily styled the supreme court; but it goes also under such titles as 'supreme judicial court', 'supreme court of errors,' and 'court of appeals.' Because of the pressure of business before these courts, some states require or permit the court to sit in two divisions, thus expediting the handling of cases."

For a very interesting and lucid explanation of the origin and organization of our court system and its relationship to that in Great Britain, the reader is referred to Roscoe Pound's *Organization of Courts*, Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1940. This work indicates that our state and federal judicial systems are outgrowths of English systems and the work impresses one with the ever-changing nature of our courts.

Just as the state court system has courts of original jurisdiction, appellate courts and a supreme court, so has the federal system. The district court is the federal court of original jurisdiction, with ninety districts in the United States, and the circuit court of appeals is next in line, with the United States Supreme Court at the top.

Rather than set up an elaborate and fully independent federal judiciary, Congress permits the state courts to care for some lawsuits arising under federal law. The state courts have exclusive jurisdiction over civil suits otherwise federal in nature, if the amount in controversy is less than \$3,000. The state courts, moreover, have concurrent jurisdiction over all other federal cases except those given exclusively to the federal courts. The state courts have concurrent jurisdiction over all cases except those involving ambassadors, the federal or a state government, admiralty or maritime law and federal patent, copyright, and bankruptcy matters.

With the exception of the minor courts, all of the courts mentioned are courts "of record" and hold a seal. The records which result from court action are not only of value to lawyers and attorneys but they can be very helpful to the genealogist. Special methods and facilities have been in vogue over the years for the reporting of court actions, and this book cannot possibly cover such detail, but students will

be aware of law libraries, law digests and related works which report certain cases carried through court action.

As many of these cases are carried out in and under the county jurisdiction, the researcher should be alert to such records in the county courthouse as well as in other repositories. Dockets, calendars and indexes of court actions dealing with civil and criminal matters are extant and available for search in the county courthouse as well as are matters relating to probate and guardianship. The dockets, calendars and indexes may be on a chronological basis and the genealogist must search a specified time period to locate a case pertaining to his party of interest. In addition to the dockets and calendars, which have to do with the appearance or preliminary actions of a court case, there are court order books in many court houses which detail the courts actions relating to each case. Many different types of entries might be found, ranging from a mere statement that the case was carried forward to the next term, to a detailed explanation of an administrator's actions in a probate matter. The court order books are chronological listings of the orders and actions of the court and often contain valuable genealogical fact. Since master indexes do not often exist for these order books, it is necessary to search such records in person or by one's agent to find the desired information.

In addition to the order books, there are often "case files" or "packets" which contain documents and papers relating to certain cases. These case files are often numbered and some are cross-referenced to calendars and indexes so that they might be located easily. In some instances the case files are arranged alphabetically by the name of the plaintiff and defendant. Older case files or packets are not often in common use and are often filed in obscure places such as vaults, attics or elevator shafts. Courthouse personnel are sometimes ignorant of such files, and imaginative searches must be made to locate the packets.

In addition to the indexes, calendars, dockets, order books and case files, there are often miscellaneous books of entry containing special information. This is particularly

true of naturalization and citizenship matters as well as the recording of military discharge information. The authors have had experience in Utah, Kansas, Iowa, Nebraska, Illinois, Indiana, Missouri, Ohio, Pennsylvania, New York, Kentucky, Tennessee and Virginia courthouses and have invariably found special books of entry for naturalization, citizenship alias, and related matters. They are usually filed in a restricted area of the courthouse and must be searched by permission of some official in the particular court area. It is often illegal to make photostats of naturalization records, but extracts may lawfully be taken.

Court action can effect any person and can deal with almost any phase of life, so the competent genealogist will use these records in conjunction with other sources, such as land, emigration, military and vital records. It is realized that *probate* is a court action within itself, but it has been treated under a special heading in this book and includes information pertaining to estates and guardianship matters.

For an informative article on genealogical research in Session Laws and Statutes, the reader is referred to Noel C. Stevenson's "*The Genealogical Reader*", Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Company, 1958, pp. 69-75. For detailed information on state laws pertaining to special items such as divorce, probate administration, contracts, rights of dower, etc., see Martindale and Hubbard's "Digest of State Laws" which is published annually. Brigham Young University has four digests of state laws as early as 1879, and the Salt Lake Public Library has Martindale and Hubbard's work for 1943 only. In a similar vein, many counties have included digests of their state laws in published county histories. Kentucky, Virginia and Pennsylvania have such early collections.

The genealogist will find court records in many states from the state's date of origin. This holds for Colonial America as well as for Public Domain states, and some of these court actions are, to modern mind, almost hilarious in their content. The facts included often show ages and places of birth and can even be valuable in gaining information

on immigrant ancestors. While searching York County, Maine, court records, which are on microfilm at the Genealogical Society in Salt Lake City, the following interesting information was given as the result of a grand jury holding forth in January of 1697:

We present Sarah King for committing fornication.

We present Samuel Bragdon Senr for retailing strong drink without licence—answered in Court.

We present Alexander Maxell for drinking to excess.

We present John Bacie for cursing.

We present Thomas Feanor and Ruth Donnel his now wife for committing fornication.

We present Thomas Starboard for not requesting the public worship of God upon ye Lords day.

We present ye Town of Kittery for not laying out highways according to Law in said Town.

We present John Hoigh for swearing.

We present Francis Herloe for swearing he would cut his wife's throat.

We present ye Widdow Taylor, Walter Allens wife, Nocholas Turbet and his wife, Samuel Brackett and his wife and John Fosts wife, for not frequenting the public worship of God upon the Lords day.

Military Records. The term *military* as used herein encompasses arms of service including the army, navy, coast guard, marines, etc. Records relating to all of these have been preserved and are available for the interested genealogist.

Every U. S. genealogist is fascinated with the thought of finding his ancestor in some military action, perhaps in the Revolutionary War or the Civil War, and rightly so, for many of our ancestors and relatives have fought in such battles and have been listed among the ranks of the military. In the United States, military action has been a part of nearly every family in one time period or another, and most persons who descend from colonial ancestry can find evidence of some ancestor or relative who served in one of the military or naval forces of the country.

Military records in the United States have to do primarily with *service* and *pension* files. The service files include such documents as enlistment and induction notices; muster rolls, lists and rosters; orders, citations, and medals; medical records and reports; and disciplinary actions or proceedings. They also have to do with discharge and separation records as well as pension records and proceedings following service. The pension files consist mainly of depositions, affidavits, claims, waivers, warrants and miscellaneous documents relating to pensions. Veterans' records and proceedings consist of death, grave registration, and burial records, indigent soldier claims and miscellaneous actions relating to the veteran after his service.

Service files relating to personnel on active duty remain in their respective organizations and follow the person during his tour of duty. This is also true of National Guard and Reserve personnel. Service files of veterans who have been separated from the service and who have no reserve obligation remain in custody of the Veterans Administration. They are usually filed or housed in the V. A. Office nearest the home of the discharged person. The service files of deceased veterans are in custody of the Adjutant General and may be deposited in any Federal Records Center. As an example, records relating to soldiers who served in World War I are filed at East Point, Georgia, in a Federal Records Center there, while some records pertaining to deceased veterans of World War II are at the Pentagon in Washington, D. C.

Service and pension files of the earlier wars have been retired and are in the custody of the National Archives in Washington, D. C. A comprehensive guide to these records will be found in Colket and Bridgers' *Guide to Genealogical Records in the National Archives*. This publication is for sale by the Superintendent of Public Documents, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C. 20402, for 50 cents. Every North American genealogist should have a copy for reference.

Military records prior to the Revolution are nonexistent

except as the individuals have been mentioned in histories and historical proceedings of America. Some lists and rosters of persons who served in state and local militia are extant but there are no collections on a national basis until the time of the Revolution. A fire in 1813 destroyed such military and pension files as were housed in the Capitol at Washington; fortunately some of the more important pension acts were passed after that period of time, and files are extant relating to persons who served in the armed forces prior to 1813.

An index to Revolutionary War pension and bounty land warrant application files was carried in the "National Genealogical Society Quarterly Magazine" from 1948 through 1963, in volumes 26, 40, 44, and 50. This gives information on individuals who applied for pensions under the various acts of Congress following the Revolution. Through the statistics given, an interested person can write to the National Archives and obtain xerox copies of important documents from the serviceman's file, or he can obtain a microfilm copy of the entire file for a reasonable fee. The Genealogical Society in Salt Lake City has consolidated this index and bound it in three volumes (call number 973 m24) located in the Reference Section.

The actual pension files may have considerable, little, or no genealogical data hidden in the various letters, documents, and depositions. Upon application with a one dollar fee, the National Archives will provide xerox copies of important papers relating to a particular soldier's file.

Indexes to service and pension files of personnel who served in the War of 1812, the Civil War, and other wars up to World War I are at the National Archives. The Genealogical Society has purchased indexes to these records and has the consolidated index to Confederate Veterans in its files. The service and pension files relating to the War of 1812 and the Civil War are still in custody of the National Archives, but the indexes may be in various libraries and societies. Pension and service files which may have existed for Confederate Veterans are in their respective states and

not in custody of the National Archives, though files pertaining to Union veterans are.

Emigration-Immigration Records. Sooner or later the U. S. genealogist faces the problem of determining the immigrant ancestral home, and this presents a challenge to his research ability and know-how. When one thinks of this record group he usually has in mind passenger and shipping lists, customs officials lists of immigrants and aliens, naturalization and citizenship records etc. But other record groups already discussed are also valuable in locating such information. Court records dealing with the immigrant ancestor might well include information in a deposition or attestation giving facts about his place of birth or residence in the old country. Probate records of both America and the former country of residence might yield clues of value to the genealogist. The researcher should be on the look-out for such information right from the start of his genealogical endeavors; for a death certificate, a marriage certificate, or even an obituary notice which may give the very information needed to complete this genealogical objective.

In approaching the problem one should first search those printed sources which have been published relating to emigration-immigration. The reader is referred to chapter 6 for bibliographic information on several such printed works. Much has been published dealing with immigration into America in the 1600-1700 period but there is a gap from the early 1700's to 1820. The works of Charles Edward Banks and John Camden Hotten are excellent for this early period in the form of printed secondary materials for New England and the South, while Strausburg and Hincke have provided much printed material on immigrants to Pennsylvania. This latter work relates primarily to German immigration for the early 1700-1750 period. The Pennsylvania-German Magazine carries much of their work. The Brigham Young University Library at Provo and the Genealogical Society Library in Salt Lake City have all the works of Banks, Hotten, Strausburg and Hinke which have been published. In addition they have several other printed works pertaining to other immigration-emigration records.

The reader should see chapter 9 for further detail on LDS immigration and emigration.

The National Archives has passenger and shipping lists for the ports of Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore and New Orleans for the period 1820-1902. These are on microfilm and are also available at the Genealogical Society at Salt Lake City through 1876. *Guide to Genealogical Records in the National Archives* by Colket and Bridgers, is an excellent reference for passenger and arrival lists in the United States. We quote from that publication:

The passenger arrival lists in the National Archives record names of passengers arriving from abroad at ports on the Atlantic Ocean or the Gulf of Mexico and a few inland ports. Although there are lists for as early as 1798, most of them are for the years 1820-1945, and for those there are many gaps. The San Francisco passenger lists were destroyed by fires in 1851 and 1940, and lists for other Pacific coast ports, if they exist, have not been transferred to the National Archives. During the 19th century the law did not require passenger arrival records as such to be kept for persons entering the United States by land from Canada and Mexico. The lists consist of customs passenger lists, customs lists of aliens and immigration passenger lists. The National Archives has customs lists of aliens for only the ports of Salem and Beverly, Mass.

The Colket-Bridgers work also lists considerable information for each port's collections with detail on the information contained in each record group. A portion of their statements on general aids to the use of passenger lists is quoted as follows:

Because the indexes to the names on the passenger lists are incomplete and because many of the indexes to the immigration passenger lists are arranged chronologically, it is much easier to find the record of the arrival of a given person if the following information is known: the name of the port of entry, the name of the vessel, and the exact or approximate arrival date. If the name of the port of entry and the approximate arrival date are known, it may be possible to determine the name of the vessel from records of vessel entrances maintained at the ports and now in the National Archives. These volumes show the name of each vessel, the name of its captain, the name of the port of embarkation, and the date of the vessel's arrival. For some ports there are two series of volumes, in one of which the entries are arranged alphabetically by name of vessel and in the other, chronologically. If in addition to the name

of the port of entry and the approximate arrival date the port of embarkation is known, it is possible to narrow the search. For example, if a passenger embarked from Stockholm for New York in a year in which 500 passenger vessels arrived in New York, it would be possible to confine the search to the relatively few passenger lists for vessels sailing from Stockholm.

The National Archives has passenger and shipping lists for the ports of Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore and New Orleans for the period 1820-1902. These are on microfilm and are also available at the Genealogical Society at Salt Lake City through 1876. *Guide to Genealogical Records in the National Archives* by Colket and Bridgers, is an excellent reference for passenger and arrival lists in the United States. We quote from that publication:

The passenger arrival lists in the National Archives record names of passengers arriving from abroad at ports on the Atlantic Ocean or the Gulf of Mexico and a few inland ports. Although there are lists for as early as 1798, most of them are for the years 1820-1945, and for those there are many gaps. The San Francisco passenger lists were destroyed by fires in 1851 and 1940, and lists for other Pacific coast ports, if they exist, have not been transferred to the National Archives. During the 19th century the law did not require passenger arrival records as such to be kept for persons entering the United States by land from Canada and Mexico. The lists consist of customs passenger lists, customs lists of aliens and immigration passenger lists. The National Archives has customs lists of aliens for only the ports of Salem and Beverly, Mass.

The Colket-Bridgers work also lists considerable information for each port's collections with detail on the information contained in each record group. A portion of their statements on general aids to the use of passenger lists is quoted as follows:

Because the indexes to the names on the passenger lists are incomplete and because many of the indexes to the immigration passenger lists are arranged chronologically, it is much easier to find the record of the arrival of a given person if the following information is known: the name of the port of entry, the name of the vessel, and the exact or approximate arrival date. If the name of the port of entry and the approximate arrival date are known, it may be possible to determine the name of the vessel from records of vessel entrances maintained at the ports and now in the National Archives. These volumes show the name of each vessel, the name of its cap-

tain, the name of the port of embarkation, and the date of the vessel's arrival. For some ports there are two series of volumes, in one of which the entries are arranged alphabetically by name of vessel and in the other, chronologically. If in addition to the name of the port of entry and the approximate arrival date the port of embarkation is known, it is possible to narrow the search. For example, if a passenger embarked from Stockholm for New York in a year in which 500 passenger vessels arrived in New York, it would be possible to confine the search to the relatively few passenger lists for vessels sailing from Stockholm.

The *Morton Allan Directory of European Passenger Steamship Arrivals* (New York, Immigration Information Bureau, Inc., 1931) contains information concerning vessels arriving at the ports of New York, 1890-1930, and of Baltimore, Boston, and Philadelphia, 1904-26. It lists by year, name of steamship company, and exact date the names of vessels arriving at these ports for the periods indicated.

Naturalization records may aid in locating the passenger lists of immigrants who later petitioned for naturalization. Some naturalization records show for each petitioner his full name and the date and the name of the port of his arrival in the United States. The 19th century naturalization proceedings for the District of Columbia are in the National Archives. Records of naturalization proceedings in Federal courts outside of the District of Columbia are commonly to be found in records of the district court for the district in which the proceedings took place. If the proceedings were held in a state or local court, the clerk of the court will, as a rule, have the records.

If the name of the court in which an immigrant was naturalized is not known, it may sometimes be learned from lists of voters in the county where he resided. Whether such lists have been preserved may be determined for some counties through inventories of county records prepared by the Work Projects Administration. Inventories for some counties have been printed, and the printed inventories are in the national Archives.

Family records in private possession, such as journals or diaries, may also provide the information that will make an effective search possible.

For some ports there are hundreds of passenger lists for each year, many of them containing hundreds of names each. Therefore, a general search is impractical unless the searcher wishes to spend days or weeks making the search. The number of passengers arriving annually at the principal ports of the United States for several decades appears on a table in Treasury Department, Bureau of Statistics, *Arrivals of Alien Passengers and Immigrants in the United States from 1820 to 1892* (Washington, 1893).²

²*Ibid.* pp. 37-38.

A Bibliography of Ship Passenger Lists 1538-1825 compiled by Harold Lancour has been revised and enlarged by Richard J. Wolfe (New York: The New York Public Library, 1963) and is an excellent reference on ships which came to America. We quote from the preface of that work.

REVISER'S PREFACE

To those engaged in the study of American genealogy and immigration Harold Lancour's *Passenger Lists* will require no introduction. Since its publication by The New York Public Library 26 years ago as a modest booklet it has achieved a remarkable reputation as one of the most useful tools for aiding in the identification of persons coming to North America before 1825, and the demand for copies of it has not diminished over the years in spite of the fact that it has long since gone out of print. The usefulness of the Lancour *Bibliography* lies not only in bringing together references to so many scattered lists but in the utilitarian manner in which it has organized and presented them.

It has been my intention in undertaking the revision and enlargement of *Passenger Lists* to preserve as much as possible the identity and practical intent of the original. Only such changes and modifications have been adopted as would improve upon the aim and usefulness of the work or which seemed necessary in order to incorporate into it eh many items which have appeared in print since 1938. The standard for including a list in the revised edition is *proof of overseas origin*. I have reserved the right of judgment in this matter, as did Dr. Lancour before me, *usefulness* being the deciding factor in borderline cases. And again no claim is made for unerring judgment or for completeness, though I have made every effort to make the present edition as complete and comprehensive as possible.

Every entry appearing in the second edition of *Passenger Lists* (1938) has been described anew and has been completely reindexed for inclusion in the "Index of Ship Names" at the end of the volume. And to these have been added approximately 145 new references. A number of typographical errors and errors of oversight have been corrected, and every reference has been annotated in order to inform the user of the origin and scope of each entry within the volume. The section "Name Registers and Genealogical Dictionaries" found at the conclusion of the earlier list has been dropped out and two appendices, one giving lists of ship passengers and immigrants coming to America after 1825 and the other passenger arrival records in the National Archives, have been substituted in its place. By doing this we hope to furnish the user with a compendium of all known published passenger and immigrant records and at the same time provide him with a resume of the holdings of our major source of

such unpublished data. (For the type of material originally included in "Name Registers and Genealogical Dictionaries," where proof of overseas origin is not established, the reader is directed to various genealogical handbooks, such as *Genealogical Research* and *Search and Research*, which usually include such materials under their respective states.)* To add to the usefulness of the work, a number of cross references have been inserted in order to inform the user of regional material included in lists entered under different localities; an author index has also been furnished; and slight changes have been made in the manner of entering references in the analytical index of ship names. I have tried to take notice of all reprinted editions of works in the *Bibliography* so as to tell the researcher what may be purchased on the "in print" market. The majority of such reprints have been issued by the Genealogical Publishing Company, 521-23 St. Paul Place, Baltimore, and, as I have been informed by Mr. Jules Chodak, President of the firm, as many more will be scheduled for republication in the future as demand warrants. Finally, the work has been given a new title which, it is hoped, will better reflect the true nature of its contents and will help abate the confusion that the earlier title created.

As Dr. Lancour implies in his preface to this edition, its undertaking has been a cooperative effort. I should like to express my gratitude for the kind assistance rendered by Dr. Gerald D. McDonald of this Library and by the staff of the Genealogy and Local History Division which he heads, and particularly by Mr. Gunther E. Pohl, who read over the manuscript and made a number of valuable suggestions, and by Miss Rosalie Fellows Bailey, who went over the New York and New Jersey sections and offered a great many references for my consideration. I should also like to thank Mr. Frank E. Bridgers for contributing his article "Passenger Arrival Records in the National Archives," which originally appeared in the *National Genealogical Society Quarterly* for September, 1962, and Colonel Carleton E. Fisher, President of the Society, for permitting it to be republished. Finally I would like to acknowledge the interest of Mr. Jules Chodak, and the assistance rendered by him in the course of this revision.

**Genealogical Research: Methods and Sources* (Washington, D. C., The American Society of Genealogists 1960); Noel C. Stevenson *Search and Research; The Researcher's Handbook* (Salt Lake City, Deseret Book Co. 1959).

More research needs to be done into emigration-immigration records and their use, for all has not yet been found and classified. Other valuable records relating to this subject will no doubt continue to be found, and the researcher should be alert to locate such information. For instance, an English research specialist informed the authors by letter

that the Society of Genealogists in London have a list of persons having license to proceed overseas from December, 1631, to 1634. The letter suggested that Hotten's list may have included only those who proceeded straight to America and not necessarily those who stopped for a time in other places, such as Holland. The reference given was "Record of the Exchequer, Kings Remembrance, Vol. 23 page 32, No. 16." Further investigation into this should be made. Also, further research should be done to outline better the relationship of English probate records to American immigrants. It is known that the Prerogative Court of Canterbury held jurisdiction in cases which were connected with America, and further work should be done to outline such possibilities. Further work should also be done in relation to published information on the migrational patterns of people as they might apply to genealogy. There is considerable published information on this from a historical standpoint but little has been published to show the inter-relationship with genealogy.

Social-Commercial Records. The last record group to be considered under United States genealogical research is not necessarily the least important but it is surely the least understood. There are several social-commercial records which are original in their nature and which can be of value to the genealogist if he will but search for them. Such records have been kept and preserved by schools, hospitals, lodges, clubs, fraternal organizations, insurance companies and other business-employment concerns. It is stressed that these are usually private records and often must be obtained and searched through diplomacy and tact. Some are restricted because of their confidential nature while others are open to the public. Social Security records and the medical registers of hospitals fall under the restricted group, while personnel records of many railroads and other business concerns may be searched upon request by an interested person. In most instances, these social-commercial organizations will release genealogical information to family members when it is to be used for historical or genealogical purposes.

School Records. Many of the older universities have published annual lists of their graduates and attendees, and other schools have maintained enrollment and registration information on persons who have attended that particular institution. When such institutions are still in existence, a letter or visit to the records office, archivist or librarian will usually bring the desired results; however, when such organizations are no longer active it may be necessary to search local libraries and archives for such records which may have been preserved.

Hospital Records

Hospitals generally maintain two distinct types of records. One relates to the admittance of the patient and is sometimes referred to as the social register. It includes such information as the name and age of the patient, his residence, race and religion, and often includes information concerning his next of kin when such data is known. The social register is not usually of a confidential nature, and family members may be able to get from it such genealogical information as they desire. The authors have had success in gaining such information from Salt Lake City hospitals, but have been informed that medical register information is confidential and not available. In some instances, the hospitals refused to release social register information and in all instances they refused to release medical register information. This was particularly true of maternity hospitals in the Utah area.

Business-Employment Records

Some business concerns have maintained personnel information from the beginning of their organization and will make such information available to the interested genealogist when it applies to his relative. It should be realized that modern personnel information is confidential in nature and will generally not be made available to the inquirer unless he is of the immediate family; however, the older records can often be searched by any interested person.

Lodge, Club, and Fraternity records vary considerably in their genealogical detail and in their accessibility. Very

little has been done by genealogists in utilizing such records, but where they exist they should certainly be investigated. Many such organizations are secret in their nature and may not release personal information relating to a member, but where the member is deceased and where a descendant is inquiring, such genealogical fact as is contained in the record will generally be made available.

Morticians' records can be useful to the genealogist. The mortician is often the one who initiates the death certificate and he frequently maintains private records just as valuable as the death record. In fact, the mortician's record may be more inclusive than that of the civil registration of death. The authors have seen examples of morticians' records containing a copy of the obituary notice, and when it comes to the direction of the funeral or burial his records are very revealing in a genealogical vein. Genealogical research technology students at Brigham Young University conducted a survey to determine the type of information contained in typical morticians' records. They contacted morticians and funeral directors in every state of the Union and were very surprised to learn that many such organizations maintained records from as early as 1841 and over eighty per cent indicated that they would make their records available to interested persons without restriction.

The researcher should keep in mind that people do not always die in their usual place of residence but many pass away in other states and even in other countries. In many instances the body is returned to the old home for burial, and this can be valuable information for the genealogist to remember. Morticians are cooperative and publish an annual directory of morticians in the United States. This can be a handy tool for the genealogist in locating the names and addresses of prospective morticians for a certain area. An instance is known wherein a mortician in Chicago responded to an inquiry asking if he had handled the body of a young man buried in that city in 1932. The mortician's information indicated that the young man died in New Orleans, Louisiana, and he gave particulars of the event which led to further valuable genealogical information which might not have been located in any other way.

Coroner's Records

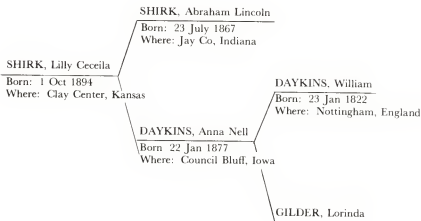
Closely akin to those of the mortician are records relating to inquests of coroners. Most counties in the United States and some metropolitan areas maintain official offices which investigate the circumstances of those who die under unusual or extreme circumstances. Whenever foul play is presumed, the coroner may be assigned to conduct an investigation and may leave valuable records relating to the deceased. While not everyone will find need for such records they are a source of genealogical fact. In a typical inquest there is a necropsy report, a pathology report, a toxicology report and a jury report. These documents are most revealing as to the causes and circumstances surrounding the death and can aid the genealogist greatly. The records may be searched by interested persons and photo-stats can often be obtained for a reasonable fee.

Undoubtedly many other U.S. records and documents exist which might prove of value to the genealogist. Those listed here are some of the more common. Perhaps some exist which have never been identified as genealogical sources, and as more persons engage in genealogical research and as more study is done into the methods and procedures of research, further information will come forth to assist the researcher in this regard. It is hoped that this outline of the more important genealogical records and sources will assist the genealogist in better accomplishing his objectives. Most of the record sources are inter-related, and the competent researcher will correlate his findings in each of them in order to reach sound conclusions.

Genealogical research in North American sources is perhaps more complex than research in other countries because of the vast number of records extant and because there was no state church to enforce registration of vital information in an early period. The researcher in North America must search a greater number and variety of records and sources to reach his genealogical conclusions, and this requires time and patience. Good notekeeping (see chapter 7) is essential in North American genealogical research because of the record peculiarities. Those who will search the extant

records, keeping minute track of research findings, will be able to correlate their findings and reach sound genealogical conclusions.

Beginning English Research. The first concern for any successful English genealogist is to determine a good starting point. In English research it is best to make such a decision on a geographic basis. One should not divide his research activity over too wide a geographic area, but should concentrate on certain surnames in specified localities for maximum efficiency. It might be wise to restrict one's searching to a ten-or, fifteen-mile radius rather than to initiate searches for all surnames on the pedigree when they might be from several different and non-related areas. For practical purposes it is sometimes advisable to mark the work pedigree and set off a particular line for research analysis and approach. The following illustration will help to show this.



By marking a particular line, the researcher sets off an area of investigation and his attention is concentrated on that part of the pedigree. This places a particular point in focus, and a thorough survey can then be initiated with emphasis on these names and places of concern. No two surveys are exactly alike but there are certain steps which

should be taken in any successful survey. The following outline shows the order of search as it applies to an English problem and utilizes the sources previously outlined.

- A. Sources to be searched in any survey:
 - 1. Family and home sources
 - 2. LDS Pedigree Referral Service
 - 3. Temple Records Index Bureau
 - 4. Church Records Archives
 - 5. Printed secondary materials through the card catalogs
- B. Sources to be searched on an LDS problem:
 - 1. Early Church Information and Miscellaneous Marriage File
 - 2. Crossing the Ocean Index
 - 3. Liverpool Shipping Lists
 - 4. Crossing the Plains Index
 - 5. Patriarchal Blessings Index
 - 6. Ward and Branch records
 - 7. Nauvoo Temple and related ordinance collections
- C. Sources to be searched on an LDS problem only when circumstances dictate:
 - 1. Obituary Index
 - 2. Salt Lake City Deaths and Pioneer Cemetery Records
 - 3. Annual Reports or "Form E" Reports
 - 4. LDS Church census records
 - 5. Missionary Index
 - 6. Deceased Members File
 - 7. Journal History of the Church
 - 8. Miscellaneous Collections of the Church Historian
 - 9. Miscellaneous Early Church and Early Utah Sources

Concentration in the above listed sources will depend upon the knowledge one has gained from previous searches. Each source is like another piece in a large jig-saw puzzle; the researcher selects the next piece from knowledge of pieces already in place. The researcher should be alert for clues which will assist him in advanced research and should

search the source which will best answer his particular problem. The clues gained in the survey will outline the plan of attack in the research phase, such as telling the researcher which census should be searched or which parish register might yield the desired information.

The Temple Records Index Bureau should be searched as soon as possible by having each name on the line of interest checked through its files. If this search is negative or if no "P's" or "C's" are listed on the index card, there is little need to search in the main section of the Church Records Archives. If the search reveals the "P" and/or "C" symbols the researcher knows exactly which sheets to search for in the Archives. It is also well to search the card index to the first 18,000 pedigree charts at this point, though searches in other miscellaneous family group records may not be necessary. Previous findings will dictate the need for these searches. As an example, a modern problem would indicate use of the recently filed "3 and 4th Generation Family Group Sheets" but an early Church problem may not indicate this as being a wise move. All the sheets in the Church Records Archives should be treated with caution as many are based on tradition and other secondary materials; however, they are valuable as guides and clues for further research.

The above listed searches represent that portion of the survey designed to prevent duplication of research effort. If at this point one were to find that extensive research had already been carried out by the Research Department of the Genealogical Society or by other persons, it would be well to halt research and attempt to locate such material for study and analysis. This would better enable one to make successful searches in original records. If such is not the case, the next step is to find which sources are available locally for research. A check should be made in the Surname Index File for all names of interest and a search should be made in the locality and dictionary files of the Library. Much time and effort can be saved by consulting the county keys compiled by the Research Department of the Genealogical Society. These exist for LDS ward and

branch records, Anglican parish registers, and for known non-conformist records available at Salt Lake City as well as those overseas. They are listed on a county basis and are presently at the Information Desk of Reference Services.

The non-LDS survey would stop at this point and the researcher would go into original records and sources, but the researcher who has a definite LDS problem should continue into the sources listed under "B" above. He may be able to determine where the emigrant ancestor actually originated or he might find other valuable facts of relationship or place which will assist him in the research phase. Since most of those sources outlined under "B" above are secondary, it is necessary to find supporting evidence from several of them in order to reach sound conclusions. Such information as where the family came from and how many persons made up the family unit might be located in those sources.

"B1" above represents a variety of information and because of its diversified nature it should be searched on any English problem. If the convert emigrated, there is a good chance of picking up further data in the "Crossing the Ocean Index." This search should be done early in the survey, and if information is located there the actual shipping records should be searched for additional facts relating to the family. Such information as the last known address in England might be found which could lead to branch record and census record searches. The search of "Crossing the Ocean Index" and the actual shipping lists should precede a search of "Crossing the Plains Index," since the individuals had to cross the ocean before they crossed the plains; and if the date of their crossing the ocean was after 1868, one would know there would be no need to search the "Crossing the Plains Index" at all.

Patriarchal blessings should always be searched with respect to an English LDS problem as patriarchs were sent to England in the 1840's and gave many blessings there, including blessings to those who may not have emigrated or to those who died before they could emigrate. Such data could also lead one to the branch or census records. Bless-

ings given in England also may have included more detail and accuracy on an individual's background in England than would a record of a patriarchal blessing given after he came to America.

LDS branch records should also be searched for every English convert. Such records not only give clues to further searches, but are often more inclusive and accurate in detail pertaining to family and migration. An important question for the research is often that of determining which branch in England the convert joined, and the obvious solution is to check his known places of origin with the film registers for branch records at the Genealogical Society in Salt Lake City. If this fails, and if none of the previous searches disclose branch information, a check should be made of the partial membership card file (often referred to as the Minnie Margett's file). If none of these disclose the information needed, one should search the "County Keys" mentioned above and investigate appropriate branches in the area of interest.

Ordinarily, early Utah ward records need not be searched unless the point of origin in England is still in question or if there is a question about the family members after they lived in the Utah area. Ward records may disclose the dates of baptism and confirmation and may also indicate who completed the ordinance work, but generally speaking one must search the actual temple ordinance records for endowment and sealing work. Knowing when to search original temple records is an important research technique and is an important part of the survey.

Baptisms for the dead are the most important in the survey phase, for they may disclose family information not otherwise available. This includes the names and relationships of other kin and statistics on their births and deaths. If a pioneer ancestor did any temple work at all it would have been baptisms as these had to be done prior to other ordinances. It is noted that endowments for the dead were not done until 1877 when the St. George Temple was dedicated. Due to the nature of the other sources already searched, it is not usually necessary to search original en-

dowment or sealing records in the survey phase unless there is some doubt as to whether Temple Records Index Bureau and Archives information has been incorrectly copied. If one has suspicion that a pioneer relative did ordinance work, he should search the baptisms first and then proceed to other ordinance collections as he feels impressed. If additional data is located, further searches might again profitably be made in the Temple Records Index Bureau and the Archives sections.

There are three general clues to indicate when and where to search for temple baptisms: First, when family tradition indicates that the pioneer ancestor was actively engaged in such work it will usually indicate the temple concerned and will give clues as to who might have been the proxy (ordinance collections are indexed by the proxy's name in most instances). If the temple is not known, the best approach is to compare the family's residence with the temple chronology chart and with the most logical temple in location. Second, based upon positive results from the Temple Records Index Bureau, if enough cards were found to indicate a pattern of relatives doing considerable work in one temple or another, one should search that particular temple in the time period of interest. Third, since most pioneers passed through Salt Lake City and may have resided there for a certain time period, there is always the possibility that they did work in the Endowment House. During the period from 1857 to 1877 there were no other temples available in the West and many people traveled to Salt Lake City to complete work in the Endowment House. Accordingly, a general rule on any survey would be to search the Endowment House baptisms for the dead and sealings of spouses. These are excellent sources to gain place and date information on relatives of the pioneer ancestor or relative.

The sources listed under "C" above may also play a valuable role in the survey though they are not as universally applicable as others listed and they are sometimes too modern in scope to benefit the researcher. If the genealogical problem is into the 20th century, these sources may prove

extremely valuable and should not be overlooked. If one is not certain of the English home or origin of the family's movements in America, these records are quite valuable. In particular, the obituary file might assist in revealing other family and residence information; however, the earlier listings are not too inclusive in their coverage and the file is primarily one relating to Salt Lake City newspapers. Since most early pioneer emigrants spent some time in Salt Lake City, it is also wise to consult cemetery records of the city. It is possible that one or more of the family members died and were buried there even though the family settled in other areas of the valley or the West.

The Annual Reports or the Form "E's" as they are more commonly called, are ordinarily searched with the ward and branch records but they did not begin until 1907 and may be considered a separate source. These may disclose important ordinance dates and may show marriage and death information not recorded elsewhere. The Church census can also be useful at this point in locating wards in which one's people lived. However, the first census was not conducted until 1914 and this is a fairly late period for many research problems. The missionary index is valid only if the ancestor filled a regular full-time mission and even then if he was active one would probably have picked up the information included in this index already. The deceased members file did not begin until 1941 and so would be valuable only for pioneers of great longevity or of the later migrations. Genealogical references in the Journal History of the Church are meager in their content, and for purposes of the survey this source is more or less a last-ditch effort to locate information when other sources have failed.

In addition to the sources listed thus far, there are a number of secondary materials which can be very useful if treated as guides. These include *Pioneers and Prominent Men of Utah*, *LDS Biographical Encyclopedia*, *Hearthrobs of the West*, Daughters of the Utah Pioneers publications, and most of Andrew Jensen's works on history and chronology. Of particular interest to the English genealogist is the index to the Millennial Star where helpful items on early Church membership can be located.

Notes for the survey should be as compact and concise as possible. A helpful system is a combination of the calendar of search idea, using extract numbers for detailed findings, and the family group sheet notekeeping system. The calendar system can serve as a guide to show what has been done and can indicate what should be searched next. The work pedigree and work family group sheets should be used freely in the listing of facts and clues to be followed in further research.

Much of the survey work is completed in records of the LDS Genealogical Society at Salt Lake City or through one of its branch libraries. This may be a handicap to those who do not have access to the Society's holdings but they should nevertheless try to accomplish the searches mentioned. Distance can be no excuse for a poor beginning in genealogy, for most of the future searches in English records must be done at even greater distances and with even greater handicaps. The sources listed under "A" can be handled quite easily through correspondence and at a relatively economical rate. Items under "B" and "C" may be obtained through branch library use, and other items may be searched by accredited researchers who could carry out the survey under one's own direction. The Genealogical Society will provide an interested person with the list of accredited researchers.

After completing the survey, one is ready to proceed into the research phase to gain new facts and to confirm or negate survey information already located. One needs to know which sources to search first and which sources will give primary and direct evidence pertaining to the problem at hand. If primary sources are not available he must know the best secondary sources to search and he must know which sources are available locally and which must be searched through correspondence or by personal visit. It is not the purpose of this work to go into a thorough discussion of such sources, for this has already been done expertly by David E. Gardner and Frank Smith in their excellent three-volume work entitled *Genealogical Research in England and Wales* (Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft, Inc., 1956-1964). However, for the convenient use of students, the more im-

portant sources are briefly itemized below by time period, content and availability.

Civil Registration

This term is used to indicate the government's recording of vital statistics—births, marriages and deaths. The recording has been in effect in England and Wales on a national basis since July 1 1837. The originals are kept at the local offices where the events were registered. A contemporary copy is sent to a central depository in London (Somerset House) which acts as a central clearing house for all of England. It is possible that some events may not have been recorded before 1875, at which time the penalties for not registering were made much more stringent, but the usual reasons for not finding certificates are more likely to be those of human error—in not knowing how and where to search. For further information on this item and for information on how and when to use the local superintendent registrar as opposed to Somerset House, the reader is referred to *Genealogical Research in England and Wales*, Vol. I, chapters 4 and 5. It will be noted there that all potential certificates of a family should be obtained, not only to verify present data but to glean important new facts and clues for future research.

The Census

The census represents one of the most important finding tools in English research and is valuable in giving data for further research efforts. The earliest census of genealogical value in England was taken in 1841 but it has limitations in its failure to record relationships and the indefinite recording of ages and places of birth. The 1851 census is the key to begin most searches in England and compensates for the previous weaknesses of the 1841 census. The 1851 lists relationship to the head of the house, gives exact ages and the parish and county of birth. The 1841-1861 census records are available at the Public Record Office in London and copies of the 1851 and of part of the 1841 are available at the Genealogical Society in Salt Lake City. All three of the available censuses should be searched for the families of

interest before other intensive searches are made. The 1871 and later census may be searched through correspondence with Somerset House if certain conditions are met. These are outlined in Vol. I of Smith and Gardner's work, chapters 6-8. Unfortunately one does not have access to the originals, as these censuses were recopied by clerks, and human error is possible in the copying work.

Church Records

This group includes both those of the state church in England and nonconformist bodies. The parish registers of the state church start in 1538, with a contemporary copy called Bishop's Transcripts being preserved since 1598. Both record ordinance data, not vital statistics, but since many of these ordinances occur shortly after the vital events they may be used in lieu of such information. While the average amount of information gleaned from church records can only be classed as circumstantial evidence they are among the most important genealogical sources and give genealogical detail for the common man over quite a lengthy time period. Most of the originals are still in the hands of the local ministers with the Bishop's Transcripts filed at the county record or diocesan offices. A small portion (perhaps 4 to 10 per cent) have been printed, filmed or otherwise made available for research in libraries, archives or societies.

The nonconformist records are similar in content to those of the Church of England but the earliest date from 1640 and the majority do not begin until the 18th century. Many of these nonconformist records were collected and housed at Somerset House in 1837 and have since been deposited at the Public Record Office in London. Others are still in private hands. Both the parish and nonconformist records should be searched for the ancestral area of interest in order to gain a full picture of one's people. (See Smith and Gardner Volume I, chapters 10-17 and Volume II, chapter 9.

Probate Records

Probate records include all documents associated with

the devising of a deceased person's estate. They date from the 1300's in England and are among the most important genealogical sources available since they give direct evidence of family relationship and other genealogical clues. Almost all of those dating prior to 1858 have been filmed and are available at the Genealogical Society at Salt Lake City. They are not used as often as they could be, perhaps because of the complex nature of their jurisdictions and also because of the handwriting problems encountered in them. English probate matters were under ecclesiastical jurisdiction until January of 1858, when they were placed on a civil jurisdictional basis. Church courts were responsible for probate matters prior to 1858 and their responsibility was complex and overlapped to some degree. For this reason it is necessary to study the local peculiarities in detail and these are well explained in Smith and Gardner's work, especially in Volume II, chapters 2-6. The reader should also be alert to special publications of the Research Department of the Genealogical Society which pertain to English probate jurisdictions.

Military Records

These records date from the Commonwealth period in England but they are extremely difficult to use unless one knows the regiment in the Army or the name of the ship in the Navy in which the individual served. Some problems can be solved by the use of Chaplains' Returns, Regimental Registers, or Certificates of Service, which are explained in Smith and Gardner's work, Volume II, chapter 7.

Land Records

These were not really employed in England as in America until about 1870. Prior to that time the only deeds to be found are those retained by the wealthy in private depositories. The two exceptions to this have to do with Yorkshire and Middlesex counties where land registries existed as early as the 18th century. Otherwise, most land transfers were shown mainly from 1182-1834 in court records called "Feet of Fines." These were fictitious law suits granted in favor of the buyer forcing the seller off the land. The court

retained the foot of the end (fine) of each of these cases; hence their unusual name. At present they are found at the Public Record Office but are very poorly indexed.

Other miscellaneous records of possible use are those relating to Manor Court records (for medieval to the 19th century problems) and Chancery Proceedings of civil law suits, especially for the middle and upper classes from 1386 to 1875. Quarter Sessions for court records of all classes from the medieval period to the present are available and might disclose valuable genealogical information, as do apprenticeship records, inquisitions post mortem, tax records, heraldic records, university biographies, poor law records and other miscellaneous records.

A few selected document examples will help to illustrate the above-mentioned record groups.

CERTIFIED COPY OF AN ENTRY OF BIRTH

The following is for the candidate James Wilson at 1841
 Where a child is necessary to find the entry
 a record for it payable as follows.



GIVEN AT THE GENERAL REGISTER OFFICE,
 SOMERSET HOUSE, LONDON.

Application Number. 218375

This margin contains any notes or remarks made by the Registrar of the original entry.

REGISTRATION DISTRICT <u>LEADS</u>										
BIRTH in the Sub-District of <u>the township of Leeds</u> in the County of <u>York</u>										
No.	(1) When and Where Born.	(2) Name, if any.	(3) Sex.	(4) Name and Surname of Father.	(5) Name and Maiden Surname of Mother.	(6) Rank or Profession of Father.	(7) Signature, Description and Residence of Informant.	(8) When Registered.	(9) Signature of Registrar.	(10) Original Name, if different from above.
496	Sixth of April 1841 at No. 55 Mill Street	Harry	GIRL	Elizah Dutton	Jane Dutton Formerly Wilson	Overlooker	The Park of Chase Dutton 104.1 10.55 Mill Street	Twenty second of April 1841	Edward Cook Registrar	—

CERTIFIED to be a true copy of an entry in the certified copy of a Register of Births in the District above mentioned.

GIVEN at the GENERAL REGISTER OFFICE, SOMERSET HOUSE, LONDON, under the Seal of the said Office, the 15th day of July 19 53



BB 099388

This certificate is issued in pursuance of the Births and Deaths Registration Act, 1863 (26 & 27 Vict. c. 36), under 23 & 24.
 It is to be used for the purpose of proving the birth of a child, and is not to be used for any other purpose.
 It is to be used for the purpose of proving the birth of a child, and is not to be used for any other purpose.
 CAUTION.—Any person who (1) falsifies any of the particulars in this certificate, or (2) uses a falsified certificate as true, knowing it to be false, is liable to prosecution.

Certified Copy of Entry of Birth

CERTIFIED COPY OF AN ENTRY OF MARRIAGE



Given at the GENERAL REGISTER OFFICE,
SOMERSET HOUSE, LONDON

Application Number P.A.S. 96604/6677/1

The Registrar for this certificate is G. 52
where a search is necessary to find the entry,
a search fee is payable in addition.

Registration District SOMERSET									
1864 Marriage solemnized at By Licence				County of Northampton					
in the Church of Blakesley		in the		Rank or position		Rank at the time of marriage		Rank or position of father	
No.	When married	(1) Name of surname	(2) Age	(3) Condition	(4) Rank or position	(5) Rank at the time of marriage	(6) Rank or position of father	(7) Rank or position of mother	(8) Rank or position of father
21	December Ninth	Robert Bodily	Full age	Bachelor	Mason	Blakesley	Daniel Bodily	Mason	Blakesley
		Jane Pittan	Full age	Spinster	—	Blakesley	Jane Pittan	Farmer	Blakesley
Married in the Church according to the Rites and Ceremonies of the Established Church by me, F. H. White									
This marriage was solemnized		in the presence of us,		in the presence of us,		in the presence of us,		in the presence of us,	
Robert Bodily		Jane Pittan		Frederick Bodily		Sarah Pittan		Rector of Meriden	

CERTIFIED to be a true copy of an entry in the certified copy of a Register of Marriages in the District above mentioned.

Given at the GENERAL REGISTER OFFICE, SOMERSET HOUSE, LONDON, under the Seal of the said Office, the 19th day of May 1966.

This certificate is issued in pursuance of section 63 of the Marriage Act, 1949. Sub-section (3) of that section provides that any certified copy of an entry purporting to be a true copy of an entry in the original register of marriages may be used as evidence of the marriage to which it relates without any further or other proof of the entry, and no certified copy purporting to be a true copy of an entry in the original register of marriages shall be received in evidence unless it is so certified.

CAUTION—Any person who (1) falsifies any of the particulars on this certificate, or (2) uses a falsified certificate as true, knowing it to be false, is liable to prosecution.

MA 782642



Certified Copy of an Entry of Marriage

CERTIFIED COPY OF AN ENTRY OF DEATH

The authority for this certificate is the Registrar General for England and Wales, who has received the entry of death from the Registrar of Births and Deaths for the district of London.



GIVEN AT THE GENERAL REGISTER OFFICE,
SOMERSET HOUSE, LONDON

Application Number P.A.S.-9 6 95 6 / 66 / F / 2.

REGISTRATION DISTRICT <u>Daton</u>									
1892. DEATH in the Sub-district of <u>Edington</u> in the County of <u>Worcestershire</u>									
No.	When and where told	Name and surname	Sex	Age	Occupation	Cause of death	Signature, description, and residence of informant	When registered	Signature of Registrar
233	Christened 1892 Edington 23rd July 1892 at Edington	James Hodges	Male	67 years	Retired Gardener (Domestic)	Chronic Bright's Disease 3 years Acute Bronchitis 3 weeks Anginal Pain Angina Pectoris	James Hodges Retired Gardener 3 years Acute Bronchitis 3 weeks Anginal Pain Angina Pectoris	Third August 1892	E. H. Hodges Registrar

CERTIFIED to be a true copy of an entry in the certified copy of a Register of Deaths in the District above mentioned.

Given at the GENERAL REGISTER OFFICE, SOMERSET HOUSE, LONDON, under the Seal of the said Office, the 10th day of August 1966

This certificate is made in pursuance of the Births and Deaths Registration Act, 1953.

Section 34 provides that any certified copy of an entry purporting to be signed or stamped with the seal of the General Register Office shall be received as evidence in any court of law, and shall have the same effect as the original entry. It is to be noted that no certified copy shall be given of an entry of death unless the entry is in the certified copy of a Register of Deaths in the District above mentioned.

DX 053293

Certified Copy of an Entry of Death



From 1754-1837 all English marriages (with the exception of Quaker marriages) were accomplished by publication of banns or by license issued by a higher authority than the regular parish, and were under jurisdiction of the Church of England. These documents can be most helpful to the genealogist, and the accompanying examples show the difference between banns and a license.

Page of ST Giles, Northampton
 Parish register transcripts
 Wm Woodin & Catherine Webb by Banns
 John Willford of Sleehorswens & Eliz Gindick of Dan. 15th 17th
 Geo: Osbourn of Weston Eliz Littlebury of Northlon Nov. 12th
 Charles Roberts & Hannah Wm. 19th of Northlon Nov. 12th
 Robert Wills & Eliz. 23rd of Hardingslens 15th Nov. 17th
 Thomas Cox of Hardingslens & Ann Cudley of this parish
 by Banns Dec 1st
 March John Davis & Dinah Wright of this parish Dec. 9 by Banns
 " Rich. Bromby of Widdon brk & Grace Curtis of Flower 12th Dec. 17th
 Abram Hall & Ann. Phillis Harriott of Sleehors 13th Dec. 17th
 " Robert Palmer & Ann. Harris of Gayton 23rd Dec. 17th
 " Wm Wright & Eliz. Milner of this Parish by Banns
 " Benjamin & Eliz. Graft of Northlon Jan. 2nd by Lic
 " John Harborslens of Willingham & Sarah Wyles of Higham
 " Thomas Jan. 21 by Lic. ---
 " John Barker & Martha Symons of Earls Barton Jan. 21st by
 " Thomas French & Ann Lack of Sywell Mar. 10 by Lic
 " Wm Clark & Eliz. Paybody of this Town Mar. 21 by Lic
 "

Born 19 Oct. 1811

Joseph Frearson Clark son of William and Ann Clark
Born at Condor in Parish of Heanor, Derbyshire

Born 4 June, 1813

Hannah Frearson Clark dau. of William and Ann Clark
Born at Condor in Parish of Heanor, Derbyshire

Born 24 July, 1816

Maria Frearson Clark dau. of William and Ann Clark
Born at Condor in Parish of Heanor, Derbyshire

Born 12 Mar. 1819

Matthew Frearson Clark son of William and Ann Clark
Born at Sea

Born 1 Sept. 1820

Henry Frearson Clark son of William and Ann Clark
Born at Ellecotts Hills, State of Maryland, N. America

Born 25 Dec. 1822

Matilda Frearson Clark dau. of William and Ann Clark
Born in Smithfield, in the State of Ohio, N. America

An Example of Nonconformist Records.

A brief analysis of the sources listed and discussed will help to demonstrate the value of each source. It will be noted that most of the sources covered deal with a time period from 1500 to the present, and problems earlier than 1500 must be handled in a special manner. Due to a lack of records, lines in the medieval period are more difficult to extend. Prior to 1086 there are no original records, so that any pedigree earlier than that period would be based entirely upon tradition. Certain traditions could have been handed down accurately, but they should be approached with extreme caution.

It is also noted that jurisdictionally most English sources come from the three areas of government, the state church and nonconformist churches. A classification of these jurisdictions follows:

<i>Government</i>	<i>State Church</i>	<i>Nonconformists</i>
National	Province	Conference, Circuits
Shire/County	Diocese	or Unions
Hundred/wapentake	Archdeaconry	Local congregations
Civil parish/township	Rural Deanery	
	Parish	

Of the sources mentioned, civil registration, census and military are all on a national basis. The parish registers are on the parish level with bishop's transcripts as contemporary copies on the diocesan level of the church jurisdiction and probates before 1858 mainly in the church jurisdiction on the provincial and diocesan level. A few exceptions exist relating to probates on an archdeaconry level and even in some instances on a parish level.

In the small compass of this chapter it has been impossible to give more than a very brief outline of the many record sources available for English research but it is hoped that even this short account will assist by indicating the beginning steps. For detailed information on English sources the researcher should consult the previously cited work by Smith and Gardner on genealogical research in England and Wales.

Experience has shown that one must be selective in his searches and investigate first those sources which will provide direct evidence toward the solution of a particular problem. Science suggests that nature is too vast and complex to understand in one glance and that a person should study the various parts in order to understand the whole. Similarly, one will not live long enough to search all genealogical sources which might conceivably include information on all his ancestors. He must be selective in his genealogical searches and search the sources which provide the best evidence in the least possible time for a particular problem. There is a close inter-relationship between these genealogical sources, and study of each one gives clues to another. The death certificate may indicate the name of the mortician and the place of burial, both of which may reveal further important genealogical facts. Obtaining a death certificate

might suggest that an obituary should be located, and if one obtained an obituary notice on a deceased grandfather why not obtain one on that grandfather's deceased wife, for it might add to and clarify facts which were related in the spouse's obituary? A probate record may well suggest that one should search land records and vice versa; while the period of time and place of residence shown in the record might suggest that one should search Civil War military records. The competent genealogist is one who knows which record to search, when to search it, what might be found in it, and where the record may be located.



APPENDIX

EARLY NOMENCLATURE*

It has often been remarked that the early settlers in New England, particularly those who came in the great wave of immigration between the years 1620 and 1650, were more nearly homogeneous than were the founders of the southern colonies. Certain it is, that such contrasts as existed in the former case were less violent than that, for example, between the aristocrats and the deported criminals of Virginia. Yet, outside of savage tribes, it may be doubted if an entirely homogeneous people has ever existed; and the Puritans, though mainly sprung from the English yeomanry, had their castes. Difficult as it frequently is to draw the line of demarcation in specific instances, in a general way the first generation of New Englanders may be divided into two classes. The first class, constituted a majority at least, with Puritan ideals. The second class, a substantial minority, drew from various elements: the adventurers who hoped to better themselves materially in the New World, the servants who accompanied well-to-do Puritans, the ne'er-do-wells who felt safer outside of England.

The trend of history is often reflected in the very names borne by the men and women who played a part in it. The Assyriologist, for example, merely on the strength of the names borne by certain kings, whether Semitic or not, can reconstruct the probable course of history four or five millenniums ago. It is interesting to see how far the succession of historical movements, the changes in manners and standards, during the first two centuries of New England life, affected the nomenclature of the inhabitants.

The first settlers bore names of three different types, those of English origin, those of Hebrew origin, and those which were intended to have a moral significance. The old English names, on account of their connection with the Church of England, were not in favor with the Puritans; those who bore them were, as a rule, either not Puritans at all or else had been christened before their parents turned Nonconformists. For a hundred years this class of names was not common, since even non-Puritan families were influenced by the prevailing mode. In some instances—though these are comparatively rare—filial piety caused the retention throughout this period of an old family name, such as Roger or Edward; and there was one family which, uninterruptedly for generations, endowed its daughters with the sturdy Saxon name of Æthelred. And despite the prejudice against English names, it is curious to note that this prejudice apparently did not apply to surnames; from the first it was a common practice to give a boy his mother's surname.

The most numerous of the three types of names employed by the Puritans was the Biblical group. Here with the exception of thoroughly Anglicized names, such as John, James, or Thomas, the Old Testament patriarchs and prophets were the favorites. The established church in England had made common use of New Testament names, and the Puritans wished their children to be distinguished from Conformists even by their personal names. The name Peter, because of that apostle's traditional connection with the Papacy, was not common; but it is not so easy to explain the aversion to Paul. This name was as rare as Seraiah, Shebaniah, Bezaleel, or any of the least known Biblical characters. There was a natural dislike of Cain, Delilah, Jezebel, Herod, and the rest of the Scriptural rascals and vampires. Judas is rare, though Jude and Judah occur; we also find Judith, the feminine of this name, indicating an acquaintance with the Apocrypha. Adam and Eve, the parents of all our woe, do not appear to have been popular. Other names, like Christopher and Christian, Angel and Angelina, Michael and Gabriel, though sanctioned by the Anglican Church, were perhaps held too sacred for mortals to bear;

they are among the most uncommon names to be found in Puritan families. But the names we meet for generations in every town and hamlet of New England are those of the famous leaders and kings of the Israelites, such as Moses, Joshua, Gideon, Samuel and David, and those of the Major Prophets.

However rare they may be, it is possible to find namesakes of practically every person mentioned between the covers of the Bible. The chief reason for this is probably the old custom of opening the Bible with the eyes shut and giving the child the name which happened to be nearest to the pointing finger. This custom may explain the occasional use of place names, like Eden and Sinai, instead of personal names. The name Notwithstanding Griswold may be similarly explained. So also the fact that in 1721 one Samuel Pond inflicted on his helpless son the name of Mene Mene Tekel Upharsin. It is not easy to think of any other rational explanation unless Mr. Pond, having in mind the interpretation of the handwriting on the wall, intended to commemorate the final downfall of the Stuarts, which seven years before had been assured by the succession of the House of Hanover. The confusion of the Biblical Mehitabel with the Latin Mabel—the names were used interchangeably—often perplexes the amateur genealogist, and the origin of the confusion is not apparent.

Of course the most interesting, perhaps the most characteristic, names were those signifying moral attributes, intended to incite the bearers of them to lead godly lives. Names of this type in New England were much more common for girls than for boys, and were seldom so grotesque as some of the monstrous combinations employed by the Puritans in England. Among the popular names for girls were Content, Lowly, Mindwell, Obedience, Patience, Silence, Submit and Temperance. What a commentary on the qualities deemed desirable in woman! Charity, Mercy and Prudence, in use before Bunyan wrote, received an increase in popularity from their appearance in his allegories; the name Beulah originated with Bunyan. Comfort, Delight, Faith, Hope, Thankful, Desire! With names like these, how charming—at least in their girlhood—these Puritan damsels must have been. Marriage at an early age, the bearing of eight or more children, and the loss, irreparable to them, of their teeth, aged them rapidly. If they could only have provided themselves with false teeth and grandmotherly spectacles, how few old hags there would have been to suspect of witchcraft.

Among the names given to boys we may note Consider ("let us consider together, saith the Lord"), Ransom ("a ransom for many"), Remember ("Remember now thy Creator in the days of thy youth"), and Saving (referring, not to thrift, but to the grace of God). Virtue and Zealous occur, but are infrequent. It is remarkable how quickly the names of this group were standardized, one portion being assigned to boys, the other to girls. The reasons determining this assignment remain obscure in many instances. Why should Deliverance, Relief, and Recompence customarily be assigned to boys, and Experience, Reliance, and Repentance to girls? It is odd that Wait and Waitstill should be masculine, Hope and Hopestill usually feminine, that Lovewell should be a man's name and Freelove a woman's. Elder William Brewster of the Mayflower named a son Love, but elsewhere this name is usually feminine; and a single case has been found where Mercy, a popular name for girls, was applied to a boy. The sex of the rarer names was differently standardized in different localities, and even in the case of the common names uniformity was not absolute.

Some names of this group apparently were improvised to commemorate some special occasion. Preserved is an example of this class. During the War of the Revolution many boys were christened Freedom, Liberty, or Independence. The name Doctor was sometimes bestowed on a seventh son in allusion to the superstition that seventh sons possessed an intuitive knowledge of the use of herbs. Mariner was occasionally bestowed on the son of a seafaring family, and there is at least one instance of Sailtrue, not a bad name for a sailor. The relation between parent and child determined such names as Lent, Gift and Welcome. The names Lament and Trial, sad to say, were considered appropriate for girls born out of wedlock; incidentally boys born out of wedlock were usually given the name of the reputed father. Posthumous girls occasionally were chris-

tened Orphana; similarly, the Biblical names Benoni and Benjamin (in remembrance of the death of Rachel) were frequently given to boys whose mothers died in childbirth, and Ichabod was also popular for posthumous boys. There were also names peculiar to certain localities. In ancient Woodbury, Conn., for instance, three feminine names, though rare elsewhere, were very common: Emblem, Concurrence (usually abbreviated to Currence), and Olive (a variant of the stately Olivia). Other names were peculiar to certain families: the wife of one of the founders of Hartford rejoiced in the Italian name of Violet, which for generations was bequeathed to her descendants; and this name was otherwise so exceedingly rare that, whenever it occurs, the genealogist at once surmises and seeks to establish a connection with this particular family.

Among the more unusual names we must not fail to mention Be-Fruitful Brockett, who died in infancy, and Maybe Barnes. The origin of the latter name has not been ascertained; possibly it was intended for the surname Mabie. Just why Matthew and Rhoda Blakeslee called their fifteenth child Careful, we shall not attempt to surmise. At times these Puritan parents exhibited a woeful lack of humor or else humor of a tasteless variety. We cannot suppose that the parents of Preserved Fish, Green Plumb, or Ivory Keys (boys), or those of Active Foote, Rhoda Bull, Rhoda Way, or Silence Noyes (girls) intended a double entendre. On the other hand, the father of Happy Sadd must have selected his son's name with deliberate malice, as sure as Jonathan Rose intentionally alluded to the Song of Solomon when he named his son Sharon. Some of the early Puritans undoubtedly cherished the same delight in the bizarre which at a later date (about 1800) caused Dr. Osee Dutton to name his eleventh child Sebastian Maria Ximenes Petruccio and his twelfth child Thomas Albert Buonaparte Jefferson. Polycarpus Nelson of Mamaroneck, N.Y., had his eldest son christened Maher-Shalel-Hash-Baz. How many today are well enough acquainted with the Bible to open its pages to that fearful name?

From about the middle of the eighteenth century onward a gradual change is apparent in the ideas and manner of life of the inhabitants of New England. Contact with the British and French during the Indian wars broke the crust of their provincialism, and the long War of the Revolution, which placed them shoulder to shoulder with the other colonists—the Dutch of New York, the gentlemen of Virginia—could not but broaden their mental horizon. The colleges, which at first had been mere classical schools for the training of clergymen, became more humane; their library shelves held more books of a secular and liberal tendency; college societies began to enact English comedies. As the merchant class grew more affluent, the younger generation studied law and medicine. Culture was imposed on wealth. It was natural that, as the opportunities for sensuous luxury and for intellectual enjoyment increased, there should be a rebellion against the narrowness of Puritan dogma and the aridity of Puritan life. Many were infected with deism, a philosophy to which the poetry of Pope—not to mention the Calvinistic fatalism of Jonathan Edwards—afforded an easy transition; many more embraced the Church of England, which, in addition to its religious and aesthetic appeal, tolerated the more innocent pastimes.

What was true of the upper stratum of New England society was true in even greater measure of the lower strata. The descendants of the adventurers and roisterers who had caused so much annoyance to the early Puritans had only in rare instances risen to position in church or civil life. They were still at the foot of the ladder, still made to feel their inferiority. The Anglican Church was at this time doing missionary work in the Colonies; the Congregational societies in some of the New England Colonies constituted the established church, for a long period acknowledged by the civil government and authorized to tax all citizens, whether members or not, for its maintenance. Eager to gain converts, the Anglican missionaries did not spurn these black sheep of Puritanism, but welcomed them to the fold. It is not difficult to understand the success of the Church of England in proselyting those who hitherto had been of little standing in New England society. Doubtless the prestige and the more elaborate ritual of the mother church impressed them; here, too, they found a religious body which was more tolerant of frivolity,

more ready to admit the weakness of the flesh and to pardon the carnal sins. But the most powerful desire was, perhaps, to improve their social status, to form a community of their own, in which they could move undisturbed by the censure of Puritanical bigotry. Thus it came about that between 1700 and 1775 the newer aristocracy of wealth and the "white trash" of the New England Colonies both gravitated towards the Church of England.

The middle classes, still constituting a vast majority of the population and carrying with them the remnants of the older Puritan aristocracy of birth and personal worth, clung to the tenets of their fathers; but even here the infiltration of new ideas is discernible. Religious zeal lost its intensity and moral fibre its toughness. Manners grew more lax; there was greater freedom of intercourse between the sexes. The eighteenth century was altogether a more comfortable period to live in than the seventeenth century had been. The old standards were breaking up; society was growing more complex; opinions were becoming more divergent and irreconcilable.

Through the transition era, this time of shifting ideas and changing manners, the trend of history may be read in the names bestowed on the children of the age. The Biblical names still greet us, but the uncommon ones begin to drop out until only the more popular survive. Side by side with them the good old English names, long disused, but not forgotten, reappear with increasing frequency. The Church of England was in no small degree responsible for the revival of Saxon names, for the Anglican families had employed these names throughout the period when most of their contemporaries were Israelites indeed. Our gratitude is not lacking as Hachaliah and Zachariah make room for Henry and Edmund, and we hail the return of Dorothy and Margaret. But we must not in our complacency overlook a long list of names of an entirely new class which make their appearance in the registers of births. Where once it had been essential to choose names from one book, the sacred Scriptures, it now became the fashion to filch names from any book. A renaissance of the classics is indicated when we find ourselves confronted with Virgil, Aeneas, and Horace. The great English novels of the generation were also read; the popularity of Richardson may be gauged by the number of Clarissas and Pamelas who kept the home fires burning for the soldiers of Valley Forge, nor were Fielding's Amelia or Smollett's Narcissa neglected. Shakespearean heroes and heroines, especially the latter, come into favor: Miranda, Orlando, Silvia, Celia, Julia and a host of others. Other names unfamiliar, yet modern in appearance when contrasted with Obadiah and Keturah, were doubtless stolen from some forgotten romance, some "best seller" of that generation. Calvin, Luther, and the names of other theologians and divines become common, and in Lamira the hymnal appears to have furnished at least one name. Finally, a few names, such as George and Frederick, Caroline and Henrietta, were borrowed from royalty and English aristocracy.

In a word, it became at last the unquestioned prerogative of parents to take names from any and every available source; and we must not forget the influence of newspapers in the latter half of the eighteenth century in propagating the names of public characters. But perhaps the most remarkable feature of the nomenclature of the new era was the transformation undergone by the names of the preceding period, nor could any more striking illustration be found of the greater laxity of manners prevailing than in the nicknames which fill the baptismal registers, both Congregational and Episcopal. Among the feminine derivatives of common occurrence were Sally (Sarah), Molly and Polly (Mary), Betty (Elizabeth), Patty (Martha), Nabby (Abigail), Sene (Asenath), Hitty (Mehitabel), Dolly (Dorothy), Sukey (Susan), Tenty (Content), and Bede (Obedience). Though less frequently, masculine names were subjected at times to a similar diminution, as Tom and Ned, Riah (Azariah), and Jere (Jeremiah) bear witness.

*Jacobus, Donald Lines *Genealogy as Pastime and Profession*. The Tuttle, Morehouse & Taylor Company. New Haven, Connecticut. 1930. Chapter Five.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Carter, Kate B. (ed.) *Daughters of Utah Pioneers Magazine*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret News Press, 1947-1950.
- Choen, Morris R. *Ten Lectures and Discussions on Science*. Graduate School, U.S.D.A., 1939.
- Colket, Meredith B. Jr. and Bridgers, Frank E. *Guide to Records in the National Archives*. Washington: The National Archives and Records Service, 1964.
- Dewey, Melvil. *Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index*. 2 vols. 16th ed. New York: Forrest Press, Inc., 1958.
- Durham, Homer (ed.) *The Discourses of Wilford Woodruff*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft, Inc., 1946.
- Gardner, David E. and Smith, Frank. *Genealogical Research in England and Wales*. 3 vols. Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft, Inc., 1964.
- Harland, Derek. *Genealogical Research Standards*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft, Inc., 1963.
- Harland, Derek et. al. *Genealogical Training Circular*. Salt Lake City, Utah, 1964 (an unpublished circular)
- Hutchins, Robert M. *The Great Conversation*. Chicago; Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1952.
- Jacobus, Donald L. *Genealogy as Pastime and Profession*. New Haven, Connecticut: The Tuttle, Morehouse and Taylor Co., 1930.
- Jacobus, Donald L. *Index to Genealogical Periodicals*. Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing Co., 1963.
- Jensen, Andrew. *Encyclopedic History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret News Publishing Co., 1941.
- Journal of Discourses*.
- Kluckhohn, Clyde. *Mirror For Man*. New York: Fawcett World Library, 1963.
- Knight, Hattie M. *The 1-2-3 Guide to Libraries*. Provo, Utah: BYU Press, 1964.
- Larson, Gustive O. *Outline History of Utah and the Mormons*. 2nd ed. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1961.
- Lundwall, N.B. (comp.) *Masterful Discourses and Writings of Orson Pratt*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Bookcraft, Inc., 1962.
- Reynolds, J. A. *Heraldry and You*. New York: Thomas Nelson and Sons, 1961.
- Rider, Fremont. *The American Genealogical-Biographical Index*. Middletown, Connecticut: Godfrey Memorial Library, 1952.
- Roberts, Brigham H. *A Comprehensive History of the Church*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret News Press, 1930.
- Rubincam, Milton (ed.) *Genealogical Research Methods and Sources*. Washington: The American Society of Genealogists, 1960.
- Sandburg, Carl. *Abraham Lincoln*. New York: Dell Publishing Company, Inc., 1960.
- Smith, Joseph Fielding (ed.) *Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith*. 3rd ed. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret News Press, 1942.
- Stevenson, Noel C. *Search and Research*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1959.
- The Genealogical Society of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, Inc. *Genealogical Instruction Manual*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret News Press, 1965.
- Wells, H. G. *The Outline of History*. New York: Garden City Publishing Co., Inc., 1920.

- Widtsoe, John A. *Discourses of Brigham Young*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1954.
- Widtsoe, John A. *Priesthood and Church Government*. Rev. Ed. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Co., 1964.

INDEX

- A -

- Accreditation examination, 14
- American Genealogical-Biographical Index, 176
- American Newspapers, 220
- Ancestors, 45, 47
- Annual reports, 188
- Apostate groups, condemnation, 27
- Associate degree program, 14

- B -

- Baptisms
 - for the dead, 24, 288, 289
 - key to the kingdom, 23
- Biographical works, 178, 179
- Bishop's transcripts, 293
- Book of Remembrance, 46
- Branch records
 - call numbers, 184, 185
 - in English research, 288
 - information on early, 184

- C -

- Calendar (see dates)
 - of correspondence, 140
 - of search, 141
- Card catalogs at Genealogical Society, 108
- Carter, Kate B., 221
- Cataloging systems, 97
- Census records
 - early Utah, 220
 - in English research, 292
 - in U.S. research, 244—255
 - LDS Church, 193, 194
- Census-mortality records
 - documents relating to, 227
 - in U.S. research, 244—255
- Cemetery records
 - documents relating to, 227
 - Utah, 221
- Cemetery-sextons records in U.S. research, 242—244
- Chance in genealogy, 37
- Cheney, handbook of dates, 72
- Church Chronology, 221

- Church Historian's Office
 - collections, 207—216
 - limitations in research, 208
 - services 201, 210, 215, 216, 217
- Church Historian's Office records
 - arrangement, 211—215
 - nature, 207, 208
- Church Records Archives
 - accessibility, 159, 168, 169, 170
 - arrangement of family group records, 170, 171
 - background and origin, 168, 173
 - finished records, 170
 - Heber J. Grant collection, 172
 - main section, 170
 - microfilmed collections, 171
 - miscellaneous collections, 171, 172
 - name variations, 171
 - pedigree charts, 172
 - sealings, 171
 - suspense file, 171
 - symbols, 169
 - TIB interrelationship, 169
 - unfinished records, 170
 - value and use, 46, 173
- Church records
 - documents relating to, 227, 228
 - in English research, 248
 - in U.S. research, 240—242
- Civil registration in English research, 292
- Collateral relatives, 76, 77
- Common ancestor, 76, 78
- Competent research, 13, 15
- Contemporary records, 42
- Copied records, 87
- Correct records, 46
- County keys in English research, 286
- Court-legislative records
 - documents relating to, 228
 - in U.S. research, 266—271

- D -

- Data, 52
- Dates
 - approximating, 65
 - calculating, 67

- calendar change, 66, 68
 - dates and the calendar, 65
 - double, 70, 71
 - fixed feast days, 72
 - genealogical significance of the calendar, 67
 - movable feast days, 72
 - new style, 67
 - months, 70
 - numeral, 71
 - old style, 67
 - pontifical years, 72
 - recording the new year, 69
 - regnal years, 72
 - Daughters of Utah Pioneers, 201
 - Daykins family, 284
 - Deceased members file, 192, 193
 - Deductive method, 54
 - Dewey decimal classification system, 99, 100, 101, 102
 - Direct ancestors, 76, 77
 - Direct line, 47
 - Documentary testimony, 88, 89, 90
 - Done, Abraham, 199
 - Doty family, 231, 232, 233, 234, 236, 237, 242
- E -
- Early LDS Church and Utah records, 217, 218
 - Edmunds-Tucker bill, 198
 - Einstein, 38
 - Elijah, 24—27, 31
 - Emigration
 - card index to shipping records, 196
 - crossing the ocean index, 196
 - crossing the plains index, 200
 - from Liverpool, 198
 - from the Netherlands mission, 198
 - from the Scandinavian mission, 198
 - from the Swedish mission, 198
 - LDS Church, 194—202
 - lost records, 201
 - miscellaneous LDS records, 202
 - private LDS records, 195
 - shipping records, 196
 - U.S. customs lists, 201
 - Endowment House, 205, 289
 - English probate jurisdictions, 294
 - English research
 - beginning, 284
 - outline of the survey, 285
 - steps, 285
 - Evidence
 - circumstantial, 87
 - classification, 52, 86
 - definition, 81, 84, 85
 - direct, 87
 - evaluation, 88, 89
 - fact defined, 53
 - from a primary source, 87, 88
 - from a secondary source, 87, 88
 - legal technicalities, 81
 - nature, 87
 - need for correlation, 82, 83
 - origin, 82
 - phenomena defined, 82
 - preponderance of, 85
 - rules and standards, 81, 86
 - Exaltation
 - a two-way street, 28
 - dependent upon individual actions and deeds, 30
 - for the living not apart from the dead, 28
- F -
- Fact, 53
 - Family and home sources, 55, 148, 149, 152—157
 - Family in the Lord's Kingdom, 28
 - Family group record
 - styles and filing, 135—137
 - use, 132, 135
 - Family tradition, 149
 - Feet of fines, 294
 - First Presidency, 29
- G -
- Genealogical Society (LDS)
 - record category designations, 109
 - reference section, 108
 - Genealogical structure, 51
 - Genealogy
 - a means to an end, 31
 - a social science, 45, 46, 86
 - analysis in, 38, 39
 - an art and a science, 31, 34
 - bias and prejudice in, 46
 - courses at BYU, 14
 - definition, 31

family skeletons and glory in, 45
foolish, 32
genetics in, 48
handmaid to history, 44
limitations, 86
name gathering, 45
proliferation of activities, 32
role, 31
scientific, 15, 16, 32, 37, 39, 44
sealing responsibility, 31, 32
variables, 44

Genetics and genealogy, 48

Grant, Heber J., 172

Gregorian calendar, 66

Godhood, 28

- H -

Haines family, 230, 231, 232, 234, 235,
236, 237

Handcarts to Zion, 195

Harland, Derek, 82

Heart Throbs of the West, 221

Historical Record, 221

Histories in research, 178

- I -

Identification, 85

Identity

genealogical, 51

keys of, 54, 57

Illinois branch records, 184

Immigration records, 201

Indexes, 176, 177

Index to genealogical periodicals, 176

Inductive method, 54

Informant, 52

Inspiration in research, 93

Iowa branch records, 185

- J -

J. Reuben Clark Library, 103

Jensen, Andrew, 221

Journal History of the Church, 200

Julian calendar, 66

Jurisdictions and sources, 54, 90—92

Jurisdictions in England, 303

- K -

Keys of the Priesthood, 24, 26

Kinship

calculating, 76—78

collateral, 76

degrees, 76

determining removal, 78

definition, 75

half relationships, 79

in-law and step relationships, 79

LDS responsibility and privilege, 76

Kirtland temple, 203

Knowledge, 53

- L -

Land-property records

documents relating to, 228

in U.S. research, 259—265

Land records in English research, 294,
295

Library

book classification systems, 103, 104

card catalog, 98

departments, 97

filing rules, 105

J. Reuben Clark Jr., 103

LDS Genealogical, 107

Library of Congress classification sys-
tem, 98, 99

Lincoln, Abraham, 21, 35

Lindholm, August, 156

Localities and jurisdictions, 73

Locality names

cultural value, 75

determining, 74, 75

Lunar calendar, 65

- M -

Malachi, 24

Mathematics and genealogy, 49

Melchizedek Priesthood, 25

Membership records (LDS)

card catalog, 190

certificate content, 191, 192

certificate program, 191

collections, 183—186, 194

Microfilmed pedigree charts in CRA,
172

Middle names, 58, 61

Millennial Star, 200, 290

Military-naval records

documents relating to, 229

in U.S. research, 271—274
 Military records in English research, 294
 Minnie Margetts file (see membership card catalog), 190
 Miscellaneous LDS record collections, 221
 Miscellaneous records in English research, 295
 Missouri branch records, 185

- N -

Names

biblical and classical, 58
 changes, 63
 clues in research, 63
 diminutives, 62
 divinely inspired, 59
 English custom in bestowing, 58, 59
 from characteristics, 61—64
 German custom in bestowing, 58, 59
 given or christened, 58
 Greek custom in bestowing, 59
 Hebrew custom in bestowing, 59
 Latin custom in bestowing, 59
 limitations in research, 64
 nicknames, 63
 occupational, 61—63
 Patronymics, 61, 62
 place, 73
 prefixes and suffixes, 61, 62
 origin, 57
 repetition, 64
 use of junior and senior, 64
 Nauvoo baptisms for the dead, 206
 Nauvoo temple, 203
 Newspapers in research, 179—181
 Nicknames, 63
 Nonconformist records in English research, 293
 Notekeeping
 calendar of correspondence, 140
 calendar of search, 141
 charts and forms, 140—143
 use of the family group sheet and pedigree, 139

- O -

Obituaries

index, 219

in English research, 290
 value, 220
 Oral testimony, 88—90
 Ordinance collections, 203, 206
 Ordinances, 22, 30
 Original records, 87, 226

- P -

Parish registers in English research, 293
 Patriarchal blessings index, 218
 Patriarchal order, 28
 Patronymics, 61, 62
 Pedigree charts
 in CRA, 172
 index, 172
 numbering system, 128—132
 outline, 77, 125
 types, 126, 127
 Pedigree Referral Service (PRS), 175, 158, 159
 Pedigrees back to Adam, 48
 Periodicals in research, 179
 Perpetual Emigration Fund Company records, 198
 Personal inspiration, 31
 Persons who died crossing the plains, 201
 Phenomena, 53, 82
 Place names, 61
 Pratt, Orson, 23, 26, 29
 Priday, Samuel, 196, 197
 Priesthood
 Elijah exercised, 27
 keys, 27
 quorum records, 220
 rights, 25
 powers, 24, 26
 restoration, 24, 25
 duties, 30
 Primary source, 87, 88
 Printed secondary sources, 42, 55, 174—177
 Probate-guardianship records
 documents relating to, 229
 in U.S. research, 255—258
 Probate records in English research, 293—294
 Proof, 53, 84, 85

- R -

- Record categories, 227
- Recording standards, 57
- Records (see vital, land, probate, etc.)
 - lack of, 47
 - tabulation program (LDS), 30
- Reference materials
 - general, 111
 - handwriting, 118
 - heraldry, 114
 - history and geography, 115
 - library science, 117
 - methodology, 112
 - names, 113, 114
 - primary sources, 120—124
 - printed sources, 118—120
 - related sciences, 113
 - topography, 115, 116
- Relationship (see kinship)
- Research method and procedure, 14, 15, 34, 49—54, 72, 76, 92, 93
- Research phase, 225
- Researchers, 33, 51
- Responsibility
 - Church (LDS), 29, 30, 76
 - individual, 31, 33, 76
- Revelation in genealogy, 50

- S -

- Salvation for the living and the dead, 22, 23
- Science
 - authority in, 38
 - definition, 53
- Scientific genealogy, 37—39, 52—46
- Scientific terminology, 52, 53
- Sealing (LDS), 28, 30, 31, 32
- Sealing information in the CRA, 171
- Secondary source, 87, 88
- Social-commercial records
 - documents relating to, 229
 - in U.S. research, 280—284
- Source evaluation and use, 51, 52
- Special LDS sources, 55, 56, 59
- Stevenson, Noel, 82
- Surname target approach, 175
- Surnames, 58, 61
- Survey phase in research, 55, 56, 147, 148

Survey sources

- general, 147
- special LDS, 183

- T -

- Temple attendance, 30, 46
- Temple record call numbers (LDS), 205
- Temple Records Index Bureau
 - accessibility, 163—168
 - all information not in CRA, 169
 - cards, 162
 - card symbols, 164, 169
 - cross reference to CRA, 161
 - filling and arrangement, 162
 - limitations, 161, 162, 164
 - origin and purpose, 160, 161
- Temple ordinance chronology list, 204
- Temple register, 205
- Terminology in genealogy, 51
- Time period, 65
- Topography in genealogy, 73
- Tradition, 48, 149, 152
- Truth, 16, 17

- U -

- U.S. immigration records, 202
- U.S. genealogy
 - beginning, 230
 - determining previous research, 230, 233
 - gaining new facts, 234—238

- V -

- Vital records
 - documents relating to, 229
 - in U.S. research, 239, 240
- Vicarious ordinances, 23

- W -

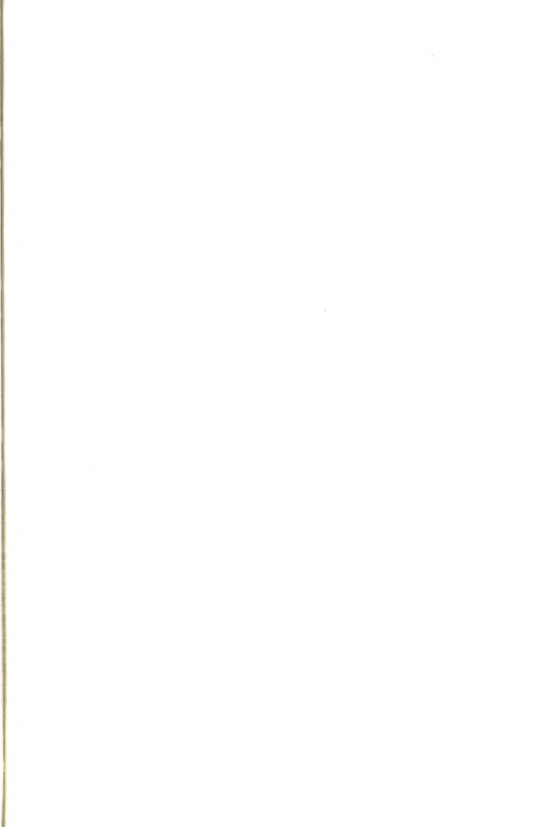
- Ward and branch records, 183—190
 - annual reports, 188
 - determining boundaries, 189, 193
 - form "E" reports, 188
 - indexes, 190, 189, 193
 - individual membership certificate program, 191
 - long form, 186

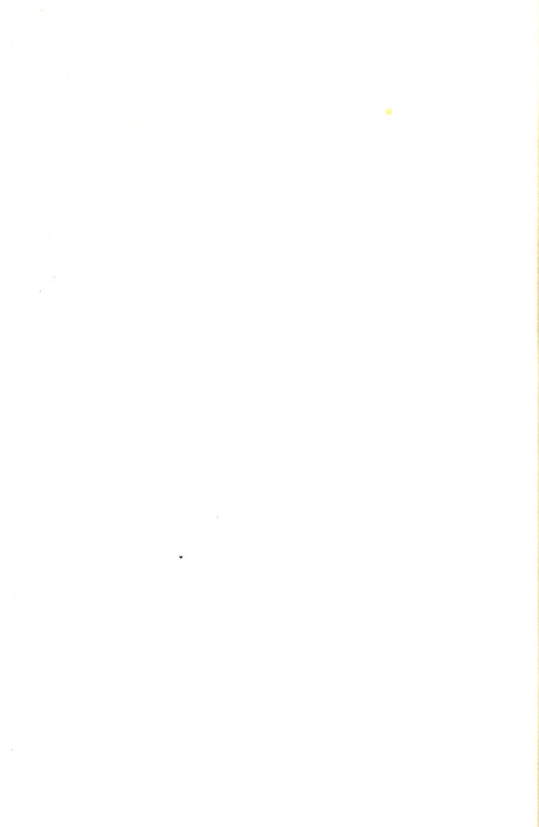
originals, 186
registers, 189
short form, 187
value, 190, 191
Wright, Joseph, 161

Woodruff, Wilford, 23

- Y -

Young, Brigham, 25





Genealogical Research Essentials

NORMAN E. WRIGHT AND
DAVID H. PRATT

Norman E. Wright is a native of South Salt Lake City and presently resides in Pleasant Grove, Utah. He received his B.S. degree from Brigham Young University in 1956, and received his M.S. degree from Utah State University in 1958.

Brother Wright has served a mission to New Zealand and has been ward and stake genealogical chairman. He served on the Mill Creek Stake High Council until he was called to the Church Priesthood Genealogical Committee, which position he presently holds.

Brother Wright has served in the Genealogical Society since 1957. He has been at Brigham Young University since 1962 as an instructor and supervisor of its Genealogical Research Technology Program.

Brother Wright is married to the former Carolyn Bevan of Tooele, Utah. They have four boys and three girls.

David H. Pratt's interest in genealogy stems from the classes he attended at Brigham Young University in 1960. In that year he joined the staff of the Research Department of the Genealogical Society of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, where he was trained in English research. Brother Pratt received an A.B. degree in history with high honors from B.Y.U. in 1963 and was elected to Phi Kappa Phi, national honor society. He began to teach genealogy classes that same year at B.Y.U. and is now a full-time instructor in genealogy.

Brother Pratt married the former Beverly Stephensen of Provo, Utah, and are the parents of two girls and one boy. Before his marriage Brother Pratt fulfilled a mission to Argentina and Chile, and has served as Elders Quorum president and High Priests Group leader.

BOOKCRAFT, INC.
Salt Lake City, Utah

